



तत्त्वार्थ सूत्रम्  
**TATVARTHA SUTRAM**

**(A Treatise on the Essentials of Jainism)**

By  
**Griddhrapinchchacharya Sri Umaswami Maharaj**



*Originally Edited by :*  
**(Late) J. L. JAINI M. A.**  
*Bar - at - Law, Judge, High Court, Indore*

*Re:-published by*  
**BARRISTER CHAMPAT RAI JAIN TRUST**  
*Controlling Authority*  
**DELHI,**



*on the occasion of*  
**SEMINAR ON JAINISM AND UNIVERSAL PEACE**  
**NOVEMBER 1956**

## FOREWORD

**T**atvarth Sutra is rightly termed and known as **Jaina Bible** and enjoys the unique distinction of being regarded as an authoritative work by all sections of the Jains.

The first edition of this book with introduction, translation, notes and commentary in English by late J. L. Jaini, M. A. was published in 1920 by Kumar Devendra Prasad from the central Jain Publishing House Arrah as Volume II of the sacred books of the Jains. The publication soon got exhausted and for the last 15 years copies of this publication were not at all available. We had a great longing to bring out a second edition and were in contact with the Trustees of R. B. J. L. Jaini Trust but our efforts did not bear fruit.

Some enthusiastic Jains wishing to avail of the presence in the Capital of India of over 800 delegates of 80 countries of the world in UNESCO Conference and 100 delegates to the Buddhism seminar thought of holding a seminar on Jainism and universal peace and Exhibition of Jain Art and Culture. One of the main items for the seminar was presentation of standard works on Jainism to the national libraries of foreign countries and to the eminent delegates of UNESCO Conference and Buddha Jayanti.

The idea was talked over to Shri 108 Acharya Deshbhushan Ji Maharaj who greatly appreciated it and advised that the sacred works of the Jains should be immediately republished on this occasion. The present edition has been possible only because of his zeal and untiring efforts. Under his direction a few benevolent Jains readily came forward to donate for the entire paper required for this publication. Acharya Shri under his direct supervision got the text typed for press purposes and looked to the minutest detail at all stages.

Acharya Shri is a Digamber Jain saint of the highest order and is always engrossed in meditation and self study. The community greatly needs teachers like him, under whose able guidance the society can make remarkable progress.

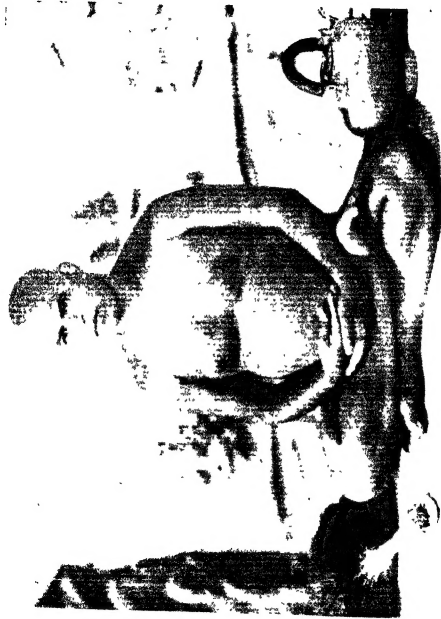
Paper for the publication having been so arranged upon we took it ourselves to go in for this much needed publication.

We are extremely grateful to the trustees of R.B.J.L. Jaini Trust who readily accorded us permission for re-printing of this book. We also express our gratitude to our benevolent Jain friends who have borne the entire cost of the paper used in this publication.

Our thanks are due to Shri Basheshwar Nath Jain, Pahari Dhiraj Delhi and Shree Munendra Kumar Jain, M. A. J. D. who have helped us at all stages in bringing out this publication in such a short time.

*Delhi*  
30th November, 1956

**Adishwar Prasad Jain M. A.**  
for Controlling Authority  
BARRISTER CHAMPAT RAI  
Jain Trust DELHI



Shri 108 Vidyalanekar Acharya Desh Bhushan Maharaj

## INTRODUCTION

The author of *Tatvartha Sutra* is the most famous disciple of the universally worshipped saint, Kundakunda. This relationship between Kundakunda and Umasvami is established by an inscription, No. 108, written in 1365 Saka, found at Sravana Belgola in Mysore. (*Siddhanta Bhaskara* Nos. 2 and 3, pp. 117 and 122, also No. 4, 51. p. Cf. also the Gurvavali in Pandavapurana, by Sri Subha Chandra about 1600 Vikrama Samvat.)

As Kundakunda was a Griddhrapichcharay, so his disciple Umasvami also was called one. For in some MSS. of *Tatvartha Sutra*, a shloka is found appended in the end

तत्त्वार्थं सूत्रकर्त्तारं गृद्ध्रपिच्छोपलक्षितम् ।

बदे गणीन्द्र संयातम् उयास्वामी मुनीश्वरम् ॥

The age of Kundakunda and Umasvami is well-established. The tradition is universal and is adverted to in all Jain books found in Jain Libraries all over. Old written MSS. in the bhandaras of Jaipur and Idar also bear it out. (See also *Indian Antiquary*, Vol. XXI, mentioned in Bhaskara No. 4., pp 78 and 204).

The age was so correct as to the central tradition of Jainism that the works of these two Great Saints command universal acceptance and reverence, both from the Svetambaras and Digambaras

### Place of *Tatvartha Sutra* in Jain Sacred Literature

---

Our revered author, Sri Umasvami, flourished A. V.714—798. If Lord Mahavira attained Nirvana in 527 B.C., then Umasvami lived 135—219 A.D. This is roughly the tradition. Anyhow, *Tatvartha Sutra* is a very old book, more than 1700 years old. It falls at the very opening of the period when the great omniscient successors of Vira disappeared, and the later Pontiffs began to rise. Thus, as to date, its place is in the second half of the first millennium after Vira

As to the 4 Divisions of Jaina Literature, Cosmology, History, Philosophy and Ritual, *Tatvartha Sutra* has its place in Philosophy (*Dravyanuyoga*.)

As to the old non-extant Literature, *Tatvartha Sutra* has descended from the sixth Anga, Jnatridharmakatha, and the second *Purva*, Agrayini.

As to extant Literature, it is nearly at the end of the submerged tradition of Virāṇ and Gautama's Word (about 600 B.C.), of the wisdom of the two *Bhadrabāhus* (400 B. C.), and then forms the first glorious successor of the great works of Kundakundacharya (100 A. D.), and then looks forward about the same distance of time ahead to the learned and lucid Prakrit Gāthas of Śrī Nemi Chandra Siddhanta Chakravatī. (1000 A. D.)

### IMPORTANCE AND SANCTITY OF TATVARTHA SUTRA

The book contains only 10 short chapters, but its value is in inverse proportion to its size. It is revered both by the Digambara and Svāmbara sections of the Jain community. The whole of Jain philosophy is taught in it. There is no Jain doctrine or dogma, which is not expressed or implied in these aphorisms. Verily *Tatvartha Sutra* is a sacred epitome of Jainism.

It is recited by millions of mouths every day, in temples and in private houses. Indeed, it is held that one recitation of this book brings as much pious merit as a fast of one day.

दशध्याये परिच्छिन्ने तत्त्वार्थे पठिते सति ।

फलं स्यादुपवासस्य भाषितं सुनिपुणैः ॥

It is deservedly the text-book of the religion of Tirthamkaras *par excellence*. How great and authoritative it is recognised to be will be further evident from the fact that it is perhaps the most commented-upon book in Jain Literature. No less than 31 commentaries of it are known to be extant now.

-----

## AUTHOR'S LIFE

Very little is known at present of the life of the Author. His name was Umasvami, or, according to the Svetambara version Umasvati. His spiritual descent is given below.

It is known that Umasvami renounced the world at the early age of 19 years. He remained an ascetic for 25 years. Then he became the head of ascetics (Acharya). From these we get the following brief sketch of dates in his life.

A very interesting story is told of how this Great Gem of a Jain sacred book came to be written.

In Gujarat (Saurashtra) there lived a Jain layman, Dvaipayaka. He was a very pious man and withal learned in Jain religious lore. He was anxious to write some really great Jain book. But worldly cares forbade the execution of such an unworldly undertaking. To conquer this obstacle, he made a vow not to take his food unless he had made at least one aphorism every day. Thus if he missed adding one aphorism to his book any day he had to go fasting for that day. For the theme of his book he took *Liberation*. And put his resolve that very day in practice. He thought out and made the first aphorism as . *इराँन ज्ञान चाविद्याणि मोक्ष नाग*, Belief-knowledge-conduct (united constitute) the path to Liberation. Fearing lest he should forget it, he transcribed it upon a side of a pillar in his house.

Next day Dvaipayaka chanced to go away from his home on some business. In his absence his house was visited by a Saint

The wife of Dvaipayaka, herself a pious woman, received the Saint and entertained him. The Saint's eyes fell upon the aphorism on the pillar. He thought over it for a moment and then added the word *सम्पत्* before it, and departed.

When Dvaipayaka returned and saw the correction in his aphorism, he questioned his wife. She had not seen the Saint do it, and said so, but suggested to the husband that it must have been made by the Saint.

The layman-author on this ran at once to find out the noble Saint to whom he was indebted for such an-invaluable and redical correction. He came upon an order of monks at the outskirts of the town and saw the head of the order sitting in his radiant peace.



He at once concluded that this must be the Saint. He fell at the feet of the Saint and made a most humble and heart-felt entreaty that the work was beyond his poor layman's wits and that the saint should oblige him and the world by completing the book, the first aphorism of which had been corrected by the Saint in such a providential manner. The Saint was moved by compassion and finished the book.

This Saint was none other than our *Umasvami*, and the completed book is *Tatvartha Sutra*,

The book is an exposition of the 7 Principles of Jainism, 1, 2, the 7 *Tatvas*.

The opening *Sutra* serves the purpose of an Introduction, Justification and Recapitulation of the whole book. It was necessary to indicate the position of the Principles (*Tatva*) in the whole range of Jain Knowledge. They are the subject-matter of right belief, and the relation of the two can not be appreciated fully, unless we consider the position of right belief in the scheme of Jain philosophy. This position is indicated by the first *Sutra*. This brings us to the Justification also. The first purpose of everything Living is Happiness to be worth anything must be eternal, faultless and independent. Such happiness is identical with the Jaina conception of Liberation. Right belief in and right knowledge of the 7 Principles, along with a life led in the light of the knowledge, and firmly established on the basis of the belief is the sole threefold path of final and everlasting deliverance. Thus the first *Sutra* is a justification of the book which deals with these basic principles of belief and action. It is also a Recapitulation, because the whole book can easily be seen to be merely an expansion of the various aspects, details and developments of this mighty and all comprehensive *Sutra* of Jainism.

The ground-plan of the book itself admits of analysis as follows:

The whole book consists of 357 *Sutras*, divided into 10 chapters with 33, 53, 39, 42, 42, 27, 39, 26, 47, and 9 *Sutras* respectively.

---



श्री जैनाचार्य उमास्वामी विरचित

तत्त्वार्थ सूत्रम्

## TATVARTHA SUTRAM

Saudharama Indra enquired the gist of the following verses from Indrabhuti Gautama with a view to bring him before Lord Mahavira.

त्रैकात्म्यं ब्रह्मषट्कं नवपदसहितं जीवषट्कायसेष्याः ।

पञ्चान्येचास्तिकाया व्रतसमितिज्ञानचारित्र्येशः ॥

इत्येतन् मोक्षमूलं त्रिभुवनमहितैः प्रोक्तमहंद्भिरीशैः ।

प्रत्येति श्रद्धाति स्पृशति च मतिमान् यः स वै शुद्धदृष्टिः ॥

i. e. "Three (divisions of) Time, (Present, Past and Future), six *Dravyas* (substances),<sup>1</sup> with nine *Padarthas* (categories),<sup>2</sup> six kinds of embodied souls,<sup>3</sup> six thought-points<sup>4</sup>, the five *Astikayas* (embodied substances)<sup>5</sup>, the five *Vratas* (vows)<sup>6</sup>, the five kinds of *Samiti* (carefulness)<sup>7</sup>, the five kinds of *Gati* (conditions of existence)<sup>8</sup>, the five kinds of *Jnana* (knowledge),<sup>9</sup> the five kinds of *Charitra* (conduct)<sup>10</sup>, these are the root principles of liberation, as described by *Arhats* [the adored ones] who are perfect and the great lords of the three worlds, (upper, middle and lower). The wise man who knows these, is convinced of them, and who realises these, is verily one who has attained right belief.

These two Gathas of *Prakrit* Language are on the basis of *Bhagwati Aradhana*.

सिद्धे जयप्पसिद्धे चउविह आराहणाफलं पत्ते ।

वदिता अरहंते वोच्छं आराहणा कमसो ॥

(2) Having bowed to the *Siddhas* (liberated ones) who are renowned in the universe and who have gained the fruits of four kinds of *Aradhana* (devotion), and to the *Arhats* (the adored ones) I shall speak of the devotions in their order.

उज्जोषणमुज्ज्वलां शिव्वह्नां साहणं च शित्थराणं ।  
दसण-णाण-चरित्तं तक्काखुमराहणा भणिया ॥

This verse is originated in *Sarvārtha Siddhi* by its author Shri Pujyapad Acharya.

(3) Right belief, right knowledge, right conduct and right austerities are called the *Aradhana*s. These should enlighten the mind, be pursued, continued, grasped firmly and carried on to perfection.

Shri Umaswami Acharya with a view to advise the Path of Liberation starts the *Tatvārtha Sūtra* with the following *sūtra* :-

### मंगलाचरण

मोक्षमार्गस्य नेतारं नेतारं कर्मसूनुताम् ।  
ज्ञातारं विव्वतरवानां वंदे तद्गुणलब्धये ॥

(4) I bow to him who is the guide, on the path to liberation, the destroyer of mountains of *Karmas* and the Knower of the principles of the universe, so that I may attain these qualities belonging to him.



# प्रथम अध्याय

## FIRST CHAPTER

### SUTRA 1

सम्यग्दर्शनज्ञानचारित्राणि मोक्षमार्गः ॥ १ ॥

**Samyagdarsana jnanscharitrani moksha-margah- (1)**

सम्यग्दर्शन *Samyagdarsana*, Right Darsana (belief) सम्यग्ज्ञान *Samyag-jnana*, Right *Jnana* (knowledge) सम्यक्चारित्र *Samyak Charitra*, Right *Charitra* (conduct) मोक्षमार्गः *Moksha-margah*, the path to liberation.

1, Right belief, (right) knowledge, (right) conduct, these (together constitute) the path to liberation.

### COMMENTARY

Right belief, Right knowledge and Right conduct are called the three gems (*Ratna-traya*) in Jain works. Each of these three can be considered in its three-fold aspect, viz, the subject, the object, and the means. For example, in right belief there is the believer that which is believed and the means of belief. Similarly in right knowledge there is the knower, the known and the means of knowledge and in right conduct we have the pursuer of conduct, the conduct itself and the means of conduct

Every mundane soul is embodied and exists in combination with *Karmas*. In a pure soul this partnership between the soul and *Karmas* is dissolved. The soul attains liberation (*Moksha*). Then in self-absorption (*Svasamaya*) it enjoys for ever its own qualities consisting, among others, of the infinite quaternary (*Ananta-chatustaya*) viz, infinite conation, infinite knowledge, infinite Power and infinite bliss.

The way to liberation on the attainment of which the soul will be freed from *Karmas* and possessed of the aforesaid qualities with others lies in right belief, right knowledge and right conduct. To attain liberation all the three must be simultaneously pursued. The path may be compared to a ladder with its two side-poles and the central rungs of rounds forming the steps. The side-pieces are right belief and right knowledge and the stone gradual stages of right

conduct. We can go up the ladder only when all the three are sound. The absence of one makes ascent impossible. Thus a simultaneous pursuit of right belief, right knowledge and right conduct is enjoined here.

Of those three, right belief is the basis upon which the other two rests. It is an essential preliminary to right knowledge. It is the cause and right knowledge is the effect. Right knowledge always implies it. Similarly right conduct is preceded and caused by right knowledge, and implies both right knowledge and right belief. For this reason, in the aphorism we find right belief mentioned first, then right knowledge and lastly right conduct

### SUTRA 2.

तत्त्वार्थं श्रद्धानं सम्यग्दर्शनम् ॥ २ ॥

**Tatvartha-aradhanam Samyagdarsanam. (2)**

Belief or conviction in things ascertained as they are, (is) right belief.

तत्त्वार्थं *Tatvartha* तत्त्व *Tatva* really means thatness, a thing as it is, अर्थ *Artha* means that which is ascertained तत्त्वार्थं *Tatvaratha* means things ascertained as they are

*Tatvas* may be translated as the Principles of Jainism

तत्त्वार्थं *Tatvartha*—तत्त्वेन—अर्थ .

—By thatness ascertained object.

—Object which is ascertained by thatness.

—That which is ascertained by its own thatness

—Objects as they are.

सम्यक्त्व *Samyaktva* or सम्यग्दर्शन, *Samyagdarsna*, is of 2 kinds :—

संलग्नसम्यक्त्व, *Sarag Samyaktva*, belief with attachment This is indexed by the 4 signs of :—

(1) प्रशम *Prashama*, calmness, non-operation of error-feeding passions and of deluding *Karmas*.

(2) संवेग *Samvega*, fear of mundane existence in 5 cycles of wanderings :—द्रव्य *Dravyo*, matter, क्षेत्र *Kshetra*, place, काल *Kala*, time, भाव *bhava*, thought-condition of existence, *bhava*, thought-activity.

(3) अनुकम्पा *Anukampa*, compassion for all living beings (mobile, *Trasa* and स्थार *Sthaavara*, im-mobile).

(4) आस्तिक्य *Astikya*, belief in the principles, soul, non-soul, etc.  
वीतराग सम्पत्त्य *Vistraga Samyaktva*, belief without attachment, i.e. the  
purity of the soul itself.

## SUTRA 3

तन्निसर्गविधिगमाद्वा ॥ ३ ॥

Tannisargadadhigamadva - (3)

This (right belief is attained) by :—

(1) निसर्गज्ञ *Nisargaj*, intuition, independently of the precept for  
others, or

(2) अधिगमज्ञ *Adhigamaj* intuition, acquisition of knowledge from  
external sources, e. g. by precept of others or reading the scriptures.

In reality, right belief is the result of:—

(1) उपशम *Upashama*, subsidence,

(2) क्षयोपशम *Kshayopashama*, destruction-subsidence or partial  
subsidence, destruction and operation, and,

(3) क्षय *Kshaya*, destruction, of दशान मोहनीय कर्म *Darshana Mohniya Karma* [right-belief-deluding Karmas] and, the four अनन्तानुबन्धी क्षयण *Anantanubandhi Kashaya*, the four error-feeding passions.

These are internal, but there are external causes as:—

(1) द्रव्य *Dravya*, matter, e. g., images of adorable अर्हत *Arhat*,  
precept, remembrance of the past lives, etc

(2) क्षेत्र *Kshetra*, place, e. g., समवेसरण *Samavasarna*, Hall of Audi-  
ence or where the Lord preach the Truth.

(3) काल *Kala*, time, i. e., right belief is attained only when the inter-  
val to the souls :—attaining liberation is less than half the time taken  
by one soul in its matter cycle, i. e. in its embodiment in all matter.  
(अर्धं पुद्गल परिवर्तन, *Ardhapudgala-parivartana*.)

(4) भाव कर्षण *Bhava Karna*, thought-activity, this is called efficiency,  
or कर्षण *Karna*. It is the 5th of the लब्धि *Labdhis*, The five *labdhis*  
attainments, are:—

क्षयोपशम लब्धि *Kshayopashama labdhi*, destructive-substantial attain-  
ment, attainment by a soul (by the subsidence, destruction and operat-  
ion of certain *Karmas*) of such senses, mind, etc., that he may be  
able to acquire right belief.

विशुद्धि लब्धि *Vishuddhi labdhi*, virtue attainment, attainment of a disposition for good and against bad actions.

देशाना लब्धि, *Deshana labdhi*, precept attainment, attainment of an inclination to know the Truth. This reduces the स्थिति *Stithi*, duration of *Karmas* except the आयुकर्म *Ayukarma*, the age *Karma*, to a maximum of कोटी कोटी *Koda koti*, crore of crores and a minimum of one crore सागर *Sagaras*.

प्रायोग्यलब्धि *Prayogya labdhi*, competency attainment, attainment of thought-activity which further reduces the स्थिति *Stithi*, duration of the 7 *Karmas* i.e., all except the आयुकर्म *Ayukarma*, age *Karma*. But as to intensity of fruition the reduction applies only to demeritorious *Karmas*. The meritorious *Karmas* are proportionally increased in intensity of fruition (अनुभवा *Anubhava*).

कारकलब्धि *Karna labdhi*, efficiency attainment, attainment of thought activity which must cause right belief in अन्तरमुहूर्त *Antar muharta*, within 48 minutes. Of these 5, the last can be attained only by a soul capable of attaining liberation and the remaining four by all.

#### SUTRA 4

जीवाजीवाश्रयबन्धसंवरनिर्जराभोक्षास्तरवस् ॥ ४ ॥

*Jiva-jivaśraya bandha Samvara nirjara mokhas tatra* (4)

The तत्त्व *Tatvas*, principles (are) जीव *Jiva*, soul अजीव *Ajiva*, non-soul, आश्रय *Aśraya*, inflow (of karmic matter into the soul) बन्ध *bandha*, bondage [of soul by karmic matter], संवर *Samvara*, stoppage [of inflow of karmic matter into the soul], निर्जरा *Nirjara*, shedding [of karmic matter by the soul (and) मोक्ष *Moksha*, Liberation [of soul from matter]

Note 1. Soul's characteristic is चेतना *Chetna*, consciousness It is of 3 kinds :-

ज्ञानचेतना *Jnana chetana*, consciousness or experience of pure knowledge in its full extent, it is found only in the Omniscient, but it begins to be experienced from the 4th spiritual stage of development

2. कर्मचेतना *Karma chetana*, consciousness of experience of action

3. कर्मफलचेतना *Karma phala chetana*, experience of fruition of *karmas*

अजीव *Ajiva*, non-soul is that which is devoid of all these 3 kinds of consciousness.

Note 2. Many Sacred books treat of 9 पदार्थ *Padārthas*, categories. They add to these 7 *tatvas*, पुण्य *Punya* and पाप *Papa*, merit and demerit. But these two are really included in the third and fourth

principles, **आस्रव** *Asrava* and **बन्ध** *Bandha*, the inflow into and bondage of the soul by good or bad Karmic matter according to merit or demerit [treated of in Chapter VIII, 25, 26, below] is the active cause.

Note 3. These 7 तत्त्व *tatva*, principles, are evidently necessary and sufficient. They are necessary, because there must be at least two exhaustive categories of the universe. By dichotomy they are logically perfect. They are the soul and the non-soul. Their union is manifest in the world. The absolute liberation of soul from the non-soul is the ultimate goal, therefore मोक्ष *Moksha*, category is placed last in the सूत्र *Sutras*. Its immediate causes are stoppage and shedding of karmas. Therefore संवर *Samvara* and निर्वार *Nirvara* precede मोक्ष *Moksha*, in the enumeration. Stoppage and shedding are necessitated by the inflow and bondage of karmic matter, therefore आस्रव *Asrava* and बन्ध *Bandha* are given as the third and fourth categories. Thus we see that the 7 *tatvas* are necessary

They are sufficient also. Soul and non-soul together constitute the universe. If they are separated, nothing more is needed. If they are united, as they are found to be in the world, then the cause of their union, the union itself the stoppage and the gradual and then the final destruction of the union are the only possible ways of considering them. Thus the seven principles are sufficient also

तत्त्व *tatvas* substances are only two, soul and non-soul. **Non-soul** is all that is not soul. Therefore the really knowable and worth-knowing object is the soul. In गथा *Gatha* 20 of दर्शन पादुष *Darsana Pahuda* it is said, निश्चयतो अप्याय हवत् सम्मत " *Nichchaya do appanam Havaḥ sammattam*" i. e. in reality soul's own nature is सम्यग्दर्शन *Samyag darsana*. Belief, experiential belief in real soul itself is *Samyag darsana*. Does not the Greek philosopher also teach us: "know thyself." "Gnothi seauton."

## SUTRA 5

नामस्थापनाद्रव्यभावतस्तन्यासः ॥५॥

**Nama sthapana dravya bhavatas tanniyasah-(5)**

By *Nama*, name, *Sthapana*, representation, *Dravya*, privation, *Bhava*, present condition, their न्यास *Nyasa*, aspects, (are Known).

They (सम्यग्दर्शनादि right belief, etc., and जीवार्जनादि soul, non-soul, etc.,) can be considered in four aspects or निक्षेप *Nikshepa*:-



(1) नाम निषेध *Nama nikshepa*, name or negative aspect, that is the name is attributed for the mere naming of the object which does not possess the qualities connoted by the name. As a man may be called King or Smith even if he is neither a king nor a smith.

(2) स्थापना निषेध *Sthapana nikshepa*, representative aspect, Representation of one thing by another. e. g., installation of Lord Mahāvira in a marble or diamond image. Or in Algebra, taking X to be equal to so and so. The first is called तदङ्कारस्थापना, *Tadākara sthapana* or सद्भाव *Sadbhavo*, i. e., the representative and the represented are similar in figure; the other is अतदङ्कार स्थापना, *Atadākara sthapana* or असद्भाव *Asad-bhava*, i. e., the representative bears no resemblance to what is represented. Such representation of the अर्हत् *Arhats* (the Adored ones) is not allowed in this हुन्दा अवसरपिण्ड, *Hunda Avasarpini*, the aeon of decrease in which there are special features of decrease e. g., birth of a daughter to a तीर्थङ्कर *Tirthankara*, etc

(3) द्रव्य निषेध *Dravya nikshepa* privative aspect. The absence of an attribute in a subject which it possessed in the past or must possess in the future; the attributing of a name; the qualities of which one does not possess now, although one possessed them in the past or is sure to possess them in the future. e. g., a Dowager queen may still be called queen, and a dethroned monarch may be called a king after deposition also, and a President-elect may well be called the President.

Take the Professor of Surgery :-

(1) He is dining. He knows Surgery but is not attentive to it now. To call him Professor of Surgery is आगमद्रव्य निषेध, *Agama Dravya Nihksepa*.

(2) But if we think of his body only, then we have नो आगम द्रव्य निषेध *No Agama dravya Nihksepa*.

e.g., (1) ज्ञानज्ञ शरीर, *Jñāyaka Sarira*.

(i) He is asleep. To call his body, the Professor of Surgery is वर्तमान, *Vartmana*.

(ii) He has ceased to be Professor of Surgery and has become a baker. To call his body, the Professor of Surgery, till his death, is अनगत, *Anagata*.

(iii) He dies and is in his coffin. To call the body, the Professor of Surgery is अतीत, *Atita*.

(2) भवी, *Bhavi*. He is going to be born a king. To call his body a king's body is *Bhavi*.

(3) तद्व्यतीरिक्त्व, *Tadvyatirikta*:—

(i) The Professor was a great and practical philanthropist and had otherwise done deeds to secure rebirth, as a king. To attribute to his body the karmic matter of these deeds is कर्म. *Karma*.

(ii) To attribute the actual particles of which his kingly body will be formed is नो कर्मनो आगम इत्यनिशेष, *No Karma no agam dravya nikshepa*.

(4) भवी निशेष, *Bhavi nikshepa*, Positive aspect or present condition It signifies the possession of its present attributes. Giving a thing a name connoting the attributes of its present condition only e. g., a General considered as in actual command of his army. It is also आगम, *Agama*, i.e., when the soul knows and is actually attentive, and नोआगम, *Noagama*, when the actual present condition of a material thing is referred to.

नाम निशेष, *Nama nikshepa*, *Nama* means mere name, *Nikshepa* is a verbal or nominal or linguistic aspect. The सप्ततत्त्व, *Sapta tatva*, seven names of Principles apply to the Principles, but they may even be given to something which is not a तत्त्व *tatva*; Principle e.g. आसुव *Asrava*, in Buddhism means "sin". This is नाम निशेष *Nama Nikshepa*; from the Jaina point of view. That is, a thing bears the name without having the qualities indicated by it. It is merely a linguistic process for the convenience of argument and consideration. In language it serves the same purpose as the symbolic letters used in Algebra.

Name applied to something which does not possess the qualities, connoted now. It is *Sathapna* or *Dravya*.

स्थापना निशेष, *Sthapana Nikshepa*, Attributed connotation as an actor playing a king or a warrior i.e., a thing bears a connotation, which in reality it does not possess and can not possess.

द्रव्य निशेष, *Dravya Nikshepa*, taking the potential for the actual.

In स्थापना, *Sthapana*, the connotation is merely attributed. It is never there. It cannot be there. In द्रव्य, *Dravya*, it will be there or has been there. The common factor between the two is that it is not there now and to that extent the connotation is fictitious in both.

Name applied to a thing which does possess the qualities connoted now:—

भावनिशेष *Bhava Nikshepa*. The first three निशेष, *Nikshepa*, are from the इव्यार्थिकनय, *Dravyarthika Naya*, from the substantia

standpoint. The last *सवनिक्षेप*, *Bhava Nīkshepa* is from the *पर्यायार्थिक* *parvayarthika* *Naya* modal standpoint.

*निक्षेप*, *Nīkshepa*, is merely the way in which the word is used.

This is most important in Jainism, in view of the *सिद्धांत* *Syādvāda* system of Jain Logic. A confusion in the *निक्षेप*, *Nīkshepa*, would be a fruitful source of ambiguity and double meanings. This *सूत्र*, *Sūtra* lays down the necessary safeguard against this. All the *सप्ततत्त्व* *seven tatvas* of *सूत्र* *Sūtra* 4, *supra*, can be considered in these 4 aspects, e.g.—

1. (i) *जीव* *Jīva* *नामजीव* *Nama Jīva*, e.g. giving the name of *जीव* *Jīva*, to objects which do not have all the attributes of *Jīva*, *Jīva* as a *तत्त्व*, *tatva*, i. e., in its reality, has the four infinities of conation knowledge, power and bliss

Mundane souls do not possess these, but still we call them *जीव* *Jīva*. A still clearer example will be to give a boat the name of Elizabeth. (As in English, a man may be called Mr. Hill or Mr. Fox).

(ii) *स्थापना जीव* *Sthapana Jīva*. As the image of Lord Mahavira. It is not *महावीर*, *Mahavira*, the omniscient still we worship it as such. As also a photo of a friend, which is loved and respected as its original.

(iii) *द्रव्य जीव* *Dravya Jīva*, as to call the, *अर्हन्*, *Arahats*, *सिद्ध* *Siddhas*. An *अर्हन्* *Arhat* soul is sure to become a Liberated Soul. As a lecturer may be called a lecturer, even when he is not lecturing, but is at his dinner

(iv) *भाव जीव*, *Bhava Jīva*. A human soul to be called a human soul only. A mundane soul to be called a mundane soul only. A Liberated soul only to be called a real, ideal soul

II *अजीव* *Ajīva*. Here consider *पदगल* *Pudgala* or matter, sub-division of *Ajīva*

(i) *नाम अजीव*, *Nama Ajīva*, calling a man a block-head or giving him the name of Hill, Wood or Rice, the names here are given merely as names, although the human being can never be mere dead, inert-matter.

(ii) *स्थापना अजीव* *Sthapana Ajīva*. As a model of man-of-war. As representing an arch in a circus by human performers or representations of rivers and mountains on a level map.

(iii) *द्रव्य अजीव*, *Dravya Ajīva*. As calling a broken carriage, a carriage, when instead of carrying others, it has to be carried itself.

(iv) भाव अजीव, *Bhava Ajiva*. Calling a ship, a ship, and so on.

III, आस्रव, *Asrava* (i) नाम आस्रव, *Nama Asrava*, as calling the सिद्ध, *Siddha*, महावीर *Mahavira*, the remover of physical ills.

Any such conscious removing of ill implies desire, which means inflow of karmic matter into the soul. In the Liberated state, this is impossible, therefore the आस्रव *Asrava*, attributed is only in name.

(ii) स्थापना आस्रव *Sthapana Asrava* as attributing fearfulness to a black and hideous image or gentle kindness to the picture or statue of a philanthropist. Here the image or statue has no thought of frightening or pleasing us and therefore we simply attribute these आस्रव, *Asrava* — inducing qualities to it.

(iii) द्रव्य आस्रव, *Dravya Asrava*. As a man whom we have observed to be angry, is not so now and we still say :— "This is a wrathful man.

(iv) भाव आस्रव, *Bhava Asrava*. Speaking of the inflow only where it exists, e. g., the inflow due to anger in an angry man.

IV (i) नाम बन्ध *Nama Bandha*, बंध, *Bandha*. O' God, you smote my enemies. Here the act of smiting implies desire and therefore bondage. But a liberated soul can have nothing to do with it. It is only attributed bondage.

(ii) स्थापना बन्ध, *Sthapana Bandha*. As a group of sculpture representing a butcher, slaughtering a cow or a hunter killing a she-deer. Here the bondage due to the slaughtering and killing is represented by the sculpture.

(iii) द्रव्य बन्ध, *Dravya Bandha*. As a man who has worked away the bondage of karmic matter due to, say, an act of stealing and has become a pious man, is called a thief, as if the old bondage still clung to him.

(iv) भावबन्ध, *Bhava Bhandha*. Predication of bondage only where it exists. As a liar is bound by the matter due to the lie.

V. संवर, *Samvara*, (i) नाम संवर, *Nama Samvara*. As an angry but weak man, not returning the blow of his assailant, walks away in silence. To say that he has a very forgiving spirit, is *Nama Samvara*, because forgiveness implies the stoppage of the inflow of karmas due to anger and it is not present here.

(ii) स्थापना संवर, *Sthapana Samvara*. As in the figure or statue of a woman, who looks the very picture of chastity. Here the stoppage of the karmic inflow which unchastity would have caused is represented by the figure.

(iii) द्रव्य संवर, *Dravya Samvara*. As calling a तीर्थंकर *Tirthankara*, before he has renounced the world, a वीतराग *Vitraga* or free from attachment, is *Dravya Samvara*. He is not a *Vitarga* yet, but is sure to become so.

(iv) भाव संवर, *Bava Samvara*. Speaking of संवर *Samvara*, as it really exists. e. g., calling only that man वीतराग, *Vitraga*, who has subdued all his passions.

VI. निर्जरा, *Nirjara*. (i) नाम निर्जरा, *Nama Nirjara*. A man is seemingly engaged in austerities, but his thoughts wander out to worldly objects. He is not really ridding his soul of matter. If one who does not know this says that the man is getting rid of *karmas*, it would be *Nama Nirjara*. i. e., attributing *Nirjara* where it does not really exist.

(ii) स्थापना निर्जरा, *Sthapana Nirjara* e. g., the representation of *Nirjara* by the contemplative posture of a saint in a picture or in an image.

(iii) द्रव्य निर्जरा *Dravya Nirjara*. As saying of a तीर्थंकर *Tirthankara* when he is still a house-holder, that he is born ascetic. This is *Dravya Nirjara*, as the *Tirthankara* is sure to become an ascetic and get rid of karmic matter.

(iv) भाव निर्जरा *Bhava Nirjara*. Attributing *Nirjara*, when the shedding of karmic matter is actually going on.

VIII. मोक्ष *Moksha*. (i) नाममोक्ष *Nama, Moksha*. As a much harassed debtor on paying off his last debt may exclaim.—

"This is my liberation. " This can not mean *Moksha* and yet word used connoted it. *Moksha* is claimed by one who has not got it. This is only नाम मोक्ष *Nama Moksha*

(ii) स्थापना मोक्ष *Sthapana, moksha* e g., Liberation is represented by the figure of a सिद्ध, *Siddha*. This figure is an image of brilliance, as the Liberated Soul are described to be in सिद्धक्षेत्र, *Sidha Khsetra*, the half-moon-shaped space at the summit of the Universe, which is the abode of *Siddhas*.

(iii) द्रव्य मोक्ष, *Dravya Moksha*. To call the *Arhats, Siddhas* *Arhats* are sure to become *Siddhas*, but as *Arhats* they are not *Siddhas*.

(iv) भाव मोक्ष, *Bhava Moksha*. Attributing *Moksha* only to Liberated Souls.



## SUTARA 6

## प्रमाण नयैरधिगमः (६)

## Pramana Nayairadhi gamah--(6)

अधिगम *Adhigama* is knowledge that is derived from tuition, external sources, e.g. precept and scriptures. It is attained by (means of) *Pramana* and *Naya*.

प्रमाण *Pramana*. Authority by means of which we test direct or indirect right knowledge of the self and the non self in all their aspects.

नय *Naya*, a stand-point which gives partial knowledge of a thing in some particular aspect of it.

*Note*—Right belief is not identical with faith. Its authority is neither external nor autocratic. It is reasoned knowledge. It is a sort of a sight of a thing. You cannot doubt its testimony. So long as there is doubt, there is no right belief. But doubt must not be suppressed. It must be destroyed. Things have not to be taken on trust. They must be tested and tried by every one on self. This सूत्र *Sutra* lays down the mode in which it can be done. It refers the enquirer to the first laws of thought and to the universal principles of all reasoning, that is, to logic, under the names of प्रमाण *Praman* and नय *Naya*.

प्रमाण *Pramana*, is authority. It is:—

(i) प्रत्यक्ष *Pratyaksha*, i. e. direct self evident.

Like:—अवधि *Avadhi*, Visual.

मनः प्रवच *Manaprayaya*, Mental and

केवल *Kevala*, Perfect knowledge.

(ii) परोक्ष *Paroksha*, Mediate, indirect,

Like:—मति *Mat*, Sensitive and

श्रुति *Shruti*, Scriptural knowledge.

नय *Naya*, is stand point. It is:—

(1) द्रव्यार्थिक *Dravyarthika*, Substantial, or

(2) पर्यायार्थिक *Paryayarthika*, Modal ?

The most prominent use of stand-points is, of course the *स्यद्वन्द्व* *Syadvada* or सप्तसमीचीन *Sapta-bhang* *Naya*, of Jainism, i. e. the point of view of speech of seven kinds:—

“From some point of view a substance, is not, is and is not, is unpredictable, and again is and is unpredictable ? is not and is unpredictable, is and is not and is unpredictable:—

(1) स्यात् अस्ति *Syat Asti*, i. e. from the point of view of its own is own subject matter place, time and nature, the substance is i. e. exists as itself.

(2) स्यात् नास्ति *Syat Nasti*, i. e. from the point of view of the subject matter, place, time and nature of non-substance. it is, not i. e. it is not non-substance.

(3) स्यात् अस्ति नास्ति *Syat Asti Nasti*, i. e. from the point of view of the same quaternary relating to itself and non-substance, it may be said that substance is and is not if we make the statement successively.

(4) स्यात् अव्यक्तम् *Syat Avaktva* i. e. if statement under *Syat Asti Nasti*, are attempted to be made of once, it can not be done. Thus a substance is unpredicable.

(5) स्यात् अस्ति अव्यक्तम् *Syat Asti Avaktavya*, i. e. from the point of view of its own quaternary and at the same time from the joint quaternary of itself and non-substance, substance is and is also unpredicable.

(6) स्यात् नास्ति अव्यक्तम् *Syat Nasti Avaktavya*, i. e. From the point of view of non-substance quaternary and at the same time from the joint quaternary of itself and non-substance, substance is not and is unpredicable.

(7) स्यात् अस्ति नास्ति अव्यक्तम् *Syat Asti Nasti Avaktva*, i. e. from the point of view of its own quaternary and non-substance quaternary and at the same time from the joint quaternary of itself and non-substance, substance is and is not and is unpredicable

( See *Panchastikaya Gatha 14* )

There are the Universal instruments for acquiring all kinds of knowledge.

But there are particular ways in which they can be usefully applied to right belief. Those ways are given in *Sutra 7th* and *8th*.

*Sutra 6th* gives the means of acquiring अधिगम्य *Adhigama*.

*Sutras 7th* and *8th* give the modes of employing those means.



## SUTRA 7

निर्देश स्वामित्व साधनाधिकरण स्थिति विधानतः ॥७॥

**Nirdesa svamitva Sadhanadhi karana sthiti vidhanatah.**

*Adhigama* is attained by (considering a Principle, or any substance with reference to its निर्देश *Nirdesh* (Description, Definition), स्वामित्व *Svamitva* (Possession, Inherence, साधन *Sadhan* (cause), अधिकरण *Adhikarana* (Place), स्थिति *Sthiti*, (Duration), and विधान *Vidhana* (Division).

Everything can be known by being treated in these six ways, e.g. man. He may be described as a rational animal, the qualities of rationality and animality inhere in all human beings; the cause of being a man is the sum-total of his own karmic energies, which acting through his parents caused him to be born in the world; his birth depends on his birth-place being such as human beings can be born in it; his duration, i.e. his life is determined and limited by his age or आयुर्कर्मा *Ayu karma*, and according to his nationality he may be divided into English, French, German, American, Japanese, etc., etc.,

We shall subject right belief to this six-fold treatment.

निर्देश *Nirdesha* Right belief is belief in things, ascertained as they are.

स्वामित्व *Svamitva* Generally it inheres in souls, which are capable of attaining liberation, and only in those who have got a mind, i.e. are समनस्क *Samanaska*.

साधन *Sadhan* Cause of right belief, i.e.—

(1) अभ्यन्तर *Abhyantara*, internal. It is the making inoperative of the दशान मोहनीय *Darshana Mohaniya*, or the belief-obscuring *karmas*, and *Anantanubandhi Kashaya*, the 4 over-feeding passions.

(2) बाह्य *Bahyya*, external. This is of two kinds :—

(i) निस्मर्ग *Nisargaya*, intuitive, e.g. remembrance of past lives, enduring of great pain, contemplation of the image of the जिन *Jinas* or *Tirthankaras*, and observation of the miraculous powers of the celestial beings

(ii) अधिगमज *Adhigamaja*, acquired, e.g., by other precept or the scriptures.

अधिकरण *Adhikarana*, is also :—

(1) अभ्यन्तर *Internal*. It is the soul itself upon which right belief depends.



(2) वास External. It's त्रसनादी *Trasa Nadi*, mobile channel, i.e. that part of the Universe out side of which living beings with only one sense are found.

स्थिति *Sthiti*. The smallest duration of right belief is one अर्न्तमुहूर्त *Jaghanya Antarmuharta*, i.e., minimum, which consist of one आवली *Avali* and one संवय *Sanyam*, instant. One *Avali* is the twinkling of an eye. In one *Avali* there are. *Jaghanya yukta asamkhyta*, or minimum plenteous innumerable *Sanyam*. A संवय *Sanyam* is an instant or unit of time, i.e., the time by an atom of matter in passing from one कालाद्यु *Pradesha*, i.e., from one point of space to the next. उत्क्रुष्ट अर्न्तमुहूर्त *Utkrishta* or maximum *Antar-muhurta*, is equal to 48 minutes one *Sanayam*. The longest duration of right belief is eternity, e. g. the right belief of liberated souls.

विधान *Vidhana*. There are three main divisions :—

(1) औपशमिक *Aupashamika*, arises when the right belief deluding *karmas* and the four अनन्तानुबन्धी कषाय *Anantanubandhi Kashaya*, i.e., anger, pride, decit and greed which feed these *karmas* are made inoperative

(2) क्षयोपशमिक *Kshavopashamika*, arises when there is part destruction subsidence and operation of the right-belief deluding *karmas*, and of the error-feeding passions

(3) क्षायिक *Kshayak*, arises from a total destruction of the above. This belief last for ever.

In a similar six-fold way the other principles जीव *Jiva*, अजीव *Ajiva*, etc., must be treated

### SUTRA 8

सत्संख्या क्षेत्र स्पर्शन कालान्तर भावाल्प बहुत्वैश्च ॥८॥

**Sat Samkhyā Ksetra Sparsana Kalantra Bhavālp Bahutvaishch**

(The eight principles are known) also by—

- (1) सत् *Sat*, Existence.
- (2) संख्या *Samkhyā*, number; enumeration of kinds or classes
- (3) क्षेत्र *Kshetra*, place, where the thing is found at the present time.
- (4) स्पर्शन *Sparsana*. Extent or the amount of space touched by it in all ages.
- (5) काल *Kala*, Time.

(6) अन्तर *Antara*, Interval (of Time).

(7) भाव *Bhava*, Quality, i. e., that determinateness which is one with the being of the object.

(8) अल्प बहुल *Alpa-bahutva*, Quantity, the being so much with reference to a possible more or less, measurable or numerable amount.

By these 8 ways जीव *Jiva*, etc., can be known even more fully than by the 6 ways given above, e. g. जीव *Jiva*:—

सत् *Sat*, *Jiva* exists. This is inferred from the fact of consciousness which is a characteristic of soul, and not found in any other substance. This consciousness persists in the soul in all its conditions of existence

संख्या *Samkhya*. There is an infinity of souls. This is obvious from the infinite forms of embodied souls.

क्षेत्र *Kshetra*. Soul is found in the whole Universe.

स्पर्शन *Sparshana*. At some time or other, the soul touch the whole Universe.

काल *Kala*. The duration of soul is eternity.

अन्तर *Antara* This means the interval between a condition of soul and its regaining that condition once more after losing it. For Example, a soul is embodied as a man, then he transmigrates to other forms of existence and then once more is embodied as a man, the interval between the two human embodiments is called अन्तर *Antara*

भाव *Bhava*. The soul has five kinds of vibrations, e. g., औदयिक *Audayika*, i. e., the vibrations set up in a soul by the coming into operation of the karmic matter.

अल्प बहुल *Alpa-bahutva*. This is naturally comparative. There are more souls embodied as vegetable-souls than air souls, and more as air souls than water, and more as water souls than earth-souls and more as earth souls than fire souls.

Now take the case of Liberated souls :

सत् *Sat*, Existence. Is permanent in substance, i. e. in *Jiva*, but there is natural brought-activity which owing to time may be said to be different or distinct for each passing moment. The test of सत् *Sat* is the inherence, in the object considered of the threefold qualities of Birth, Decay and Permanence. Birth and Decay both refer to the coming in to and going out of existence of condition. The substance, of course continues the same.

संख्या *Samkhya*, Number, Infinite.

क्षेत्र *Kshetra*, Place. At the end of *Loka*.

स्पर्शन *Sparshana*, Possible extent. (Obbit). From the place of the soul attaining liberation to the end of *Loka*. Any point 2½ *dvīpas* may be beginning, because the liberated soul attains *Siddhahood* there, and then its only natural and final movement is vertical and only up to the end of *Loka*.

काल *Kala*, Time (Real). The liberated soul takes one *samaya* to reach the end of *Loka*. It retains *Siddhahood* for an Infinite time.

अन्तर *Antara*, Interval of time. Between one soul attaining liberation and another, there may be an interval of one *Samyam*, and at the most of 6 months. As to space, every liberated soul has a form and it is distinct from that of the other liberated souls. But form is not necessarily an attribute of matter. It is the quality which makes a substance occupy space, which is called its pure form. It should be remembered that matter is not the only substance according to *Jainism*. There are five others, one is space. Space gives place to everything else.

भाव *Bhava*, Quality. It's own पारिणामिक *Parināmika*, activity is soul's own quality. It's possession of the infinities of conation knowledge, power and bliss is its quality from another point of view, i. e., the absence of *Karmas* which obscure these

अल्प बहुत्व *Alpa-bahutva*, Quantity. The size of it's form depends upon the size of the body of its last mundane incarnation. It is noticeable that Existence and number are really variants of द्रव्य *Dravya*, Substance,

Place and Possible Extent really variants of क्षेत्र *Kṣhetra*, Place

Time and Interval really variants of काल *Kala*, Time and Quality and Quantity really variants of भाव *Bhava*, Quality.

## SUTRA 9

मतिश्चुतावधि मनःपर्यायिकेवलानि ज्ञानम् ॥६॥

**Mati Shrutavadhi Manah paryaya Kevalani Jnanam**

Right knowledge (is of five kinds) —

मति *Mati*. Sensitive knowledge Knowledge of the self and the non-self by means of the senses and the mind.

श्रुत *Shruta*. Scriptural knowledge Knowledge derived from the reading or preaching of scriptures, or through an object known by sensitive knowledge.

अवधि *Avadhi*. Visual knowledge. Direct knowledge of matter in various degree with reference to द्रव्य *Dravya*, subject matter, क्षेत्र *Kshetra*, space, काल *Kala*, time, and मान *Bhava*, quality of the object known.

मनः पर्यय *Manah paryay*. Mental knowledge. Direct knowledge of another's mental activity about matter.

केवल *Kevala*. Perfect knowledge. Omniscience, knowledge of all things in all their aspects at all times.

Each of these five kinds of knowledge can be considered in its aspect of the knower, the knowledge and the means of knowing, so far as the soul is concerned. The outward substances which are known are not included in this.

श्रुत *Shruta* or scriptural knowledge is also called :—

आप्त वचन *Apta Vachana*.

आगम *Agama*.

उपदेश *Upadesh*

वेतिहृद् *Atihaba*

आम्नाय *Amnaya*.

प्रवचन *Pravachan*

जिन वचन *Jina Vachan*.

## SUTRA 10

तत् प्रमाणे ॥१०॥

**Tat-pramano**

They (i. e., five kinds of knowledge are) the two *Pramanas* (and no others).

The *Pramanas* are of two kinds :—

प्रत्यक्ष *Pratyaksha* Direct. This is Visual (अवधि) Mental (मनःपर्यय) and Perfect (केवल) knowledge.

परोक्ष *Paroksha*, Indirect. This is Sensitive (मति) and श्रुत Scriptural knowledge.

But other systems of Philosophy believe in the following *Pramanas* :—

चार्वाक *Charvaka* believes in प्रत्यक्ष *Pratyaksa* (Perception) only.

बुद्ध वैशेषिक *Buddha* and *Vaisesika*, believe in Perception and अनुमानः *Anumana* (Inference).

सांख्य *Samkhya*, believes in Perception, Inference and आगम *Agama* ( Trustworthy affirmation ).

नैयायिक *Naiyayika*, believes in Perception, Inference, Trustworthy affirmation and उपमान *Upamana* ( comparison ).

मीमांसक *Mīmāṃsaka*, believes in Perception, Inference, Trustworthy affirmation, comparison, अर्थपक्षि *Arthapatti* ( Presumption ), and अभव *Abhava* ( Privation ).

### SUTRA 11

आद्यो परोक्षम् ॥११॥

**Adyeo Paroksham.**

The first two kinds of knowledge, i. e., मति *Sensitive* and श्रुति *Scriptural* knowledge, are परोक्ष *Paroksha* i. e., Indirect or Mediate

Indirect is so-called as it is acquired by the external help of the senses (including the mind) or the Scriptures, or by the internal help. i. e., by the partial subsidence, destruction and operation क्षयोपशम *Kshyopsham* of the knowledge-observing *karma*.

### SUTRA 12.

प्रत्यक्षमन्यत् १२

**Pratyaksha Manyat.**

The remaining three, i. e. अवधि *Avadhi*, visual, direct, material knowledge, मनः पार्याय *Manah paryaya*, Mental, direct mental knowledge and केवल *Kevala*, Perfect knowledge are प्रत्यक्ष *Pratyaksha*, i. e. directly known by the soul itself, without any external help

Of these the Visual and Mental arise on the क्षयोपशम *Kshayopashama*, destruction, subsidence of knowledge-obscuring *karmas*. They are called देश प्रत्यक्ष *Deshapratyaksha*, Incomplete direct knowledge. केवल *Kevala* arises from total destruction of knowledge-obscuring *karmas*. This done is सकल प्रत्यक्ष *Sakala Pratyaksha* or complete direct knowledge.



## SUTRA 13.

मतिःस्मृतिःसंज्ञाचिन्ताजभिनिबोधइत्यनर्थान्तरम् ॥१३॥

**Matih Smriti Sanjna Chinta Bhinibodha Ityanarthantaram.**

मति *Matih*, sensitive knowledge, (connotes) the same things as:

स्मृति *Smriti*, (remembrance of a thing known before, but out of sight now),

संज्ञा *Sanjna*, also called प्रतिभिज्ञान *Pratibhijñana*, recognition (remembrance of a thing known before when the thing itself or something similar or markedly dissimilar to it, is present to the senses now), चिन्ता, *Chinta* or तर्क *Tarka*, Induction (reasoning or argument based upon observation If a thing is put in fire, its temperature would rise),

अभिनिबोध, *Sabhinibodh*, or *Anumana* (Deduction. Reasoning by inference, e. g., any thing put in fire becomes heated, this thing is in fire, therefore it must be heated).

Each of the last four is based upon the one preceding it, e.g. remembrance is based on sensitive knowledge. We remember John, because we have seen him before We recognise his picture because we remember him and his picture is before us. This संज्ञा, *Sanjna*, or recognition is based upon our remembrance, स्मृति *Smriti* of John which is itself based upon our मति, *Matih*, sense knowledge of John when we saw him, as also upon our sense-knowledge of the picture before us.

Induction (*Chinta*) is based upon recognition, We see the sunrise in the same way every day We see men dying. The same or similar phenomena take place We remember and recognise these phenomena. By induction we say the sun rises always, and all men die Having stored up our observations in the above induction we can make use of them in deduction or *Anumana* and argue :

The sun rises every day, therefore it will rise to-morrow. All men die, therefore John will die,

These five are called मति *Matih*, and they arise on the *Kshayopashama*, destruction-subsidence or the subsidence, destruction and operation of the Sensitive-knowledge obscuring *karmas*.



## SUTRA 14.

तदिन्द्रियानिन्द्रियनिमित्तं ॥१४॥

Tadindriya nindriya nimittam.

It is acquired by the help of the इन्द्रिय *Indriya*, senses and अनिन्द्रिय *anindriya*, i, e, mind.

इन्द्रिय *Indriya*, is so called because *Indriya* means the soul and the sense-organs are an index or sign of that soul

अनिन्द्रिय *Anindriya*, or अन्तःकरण *Antah karana*, mind is so-called to distinguish its internal character from the external senses. It is also called नोइन्द्रिय *No-Indriya*, or quasi-sense.

In Jainism it is an organ which is made of subtle matter called मनोवर्गणा *Manovargana*, or mental matter. Its form is like a lotus with eight petals near the heart.

## SUTRA 15.

अवग्रहेहावायधारणाः

Avagrahe havaya dharnah.

They are .

अवग्रह *Avagraha*. It is preceded by दर्शन. *Darshana*, or conation, tendency towards an object. Conation is the consciousness which arises at the moment when the senses are merely awakened towards the object but before they gain even the slightest describable perception of its sensible qualities. *Avagraha* or perception is the definite or indefinite but distinct apprehension of the object, e. g. seeing a white object in the distance, we know that it is white but do not know whether it is a man or a pillar, etc. It is also called, ग्रहण *Grahana*, आलोचन *Alochana* or अवधारण *Avadharana*.

इह *Iha*, Conception. Here we deal with the contents of perception and picking out separate qualities from the continuous whole which we perceive, group them together. It is the under-mined but definite knowledge that the thing must be this or that. It is accompanied with a desire to ascertain what it really is. e. g. to argue that the while object must be a pillar. This knowledge is the nearest to the next kind, i. e., Juedgment. It is also called उह *Uha*, तर्क *Tarka* परिक्षा *Pariksha*, विचारणा *Vicharna*, or जिज्ञासा *Jijnasa*.

आवाय *Avaya*, Judgement. It is ascertained knowledge, e.g., that the white object is a pillar and not a man. It is also called, अपाय *Apaya* अपगम *Apagama*, अपनोद *Apanoda*, अपव्याध *Apavyadha*, अपेत *Apeta*, अपगत *Apagata* अपविद्ध *Apavididha*, or अपनुत्त *Apanutta*.

धारण *Dharana*. Retention. Keeping things in the mind. Memory of Judgements. Firm and indelible grasp of the knowledge of the *Avaya* or ascertained kind. It is also called प्रतिपत्ति *Pratipatti*, अवधारण *Avadharana*, अवस्थान *Avasthana*, निश्चय *Nischaya*, अवगम *Avagama*, or अवबोध *Avabodha*.

### SUTRA 16.

बहु बहुविध क्षिप्राग्निःसूताऽनुक्तध्रुवाणां सेताराणाम् ॥ १६ ॥

**Bahu bahuvidha kshipra nisrita nukta dhruvanam setaranam.**

Of many, many kinds, quick, hidden, unexpressed, lasting and their opposites.

*Eac pme pfetje fpir lomds om* Sutra 15, has twelve subdivision 1 e., each one can relate to twelve kinds of considerations. These 12 are —

बहु *Bahu*, More Many in number or much in quantity as, perception of a crowd of people or a huge stack of hay.

एक *Eka*, अल्प *Alpa*, one in number or unit or quantity as, perception of one man or of a glass of water

बहुविध *Bahuvidha*, of many kinds as perception of a man with a dog i.e., of two kinds of object perceived.

एकविध *Ekavidha*, of one kind, as perception of a flock of sheep.

क्षिप्र *Kshipra*, quick e g., perception of an Express going full speed

अक्षिप्र *Akshipra* Slow, as perception of a snail crawling by.

अनिःसृत *Anisruta*, Hidden, perception of a ship from seeing only its funnel above the horizon.

निःसृत *Nisrita*, Exposed, perception of an open thing, like a book on a table

अनुक्त *Anukta*, Unexpressed, not described, perception of thing which has not been described to us, as that of an animal not known.

उक्त *Ukta*, Described, perception of what has been described, e. g., perception of a horse or cow, described in a book.



अथ *Dhruva*, Lasting, perception of a mountain.

अथ *Adhruva*, Transient, perception of a flash of lightning.

As perception or *Avagraha* is illustrated above so *Iha*, *Avaya* and *Dharama* have to be treated. Thus we obtain  $12 \times 4 = 48$  divisions of senses-knowledge through any one of the senses. As there are five senses and one mind, the total kinds of sense-knowledge are .—

$$48 \times (5+1) = 48 \times 6 = 288$$

### SUTRA 17.

अर्थस्य ॥ १७ ॥

Arthasya

The 288 refer to, i.e. are of determinable sense objects, (i. e., thing that can be touched, tasted, smelt, seen, heard or perceived by the mind).

The 288 sub-divisions of knowledge relates to determinable sense objects.

### SUTRA 18.

व्यञ्जनस्यावग्रहः ॥ १८ ॥

Vyanjanasya Vagrahah

There is only perception, *Avagraha* of *Vyanjana*, i. e., indeterminate object, (i. e. of a thing of which we know very little, so little that we can not proceed to the *Iha*, Conception, *Avaya*, Judgement, and *Dharana*, Retention of it ).

It can be only the subject-matter of four senses, namely, touch, taste, smell and hearing. It can not be the subject-matter of sight and mind, which can acquire further knowledge of anything before them, e. g. we hear a sound but it is so slight and sudden that although we are sure that there was a sound, we can not determine its character or origin.

Thus there is no *Iha*, conception, *Avaya*, Judgement or *Dharma*, Retention of *Vyanjana*, an indeterminate object. But if the object becomes knowable as, e. g., the sound in the last illustration, by repetition, then the perception of it may become, अर्थवग्रह *Arthavagraha*, i. e., perception of a पदार्थ *Padartha* or determinable sense-object, as distinguished from व्यञ्जनावग्रह *Vyanjanavagraha* perception of व्यञ्जन *Vyanjana*, or an indeterminate sense-object.

## SUTRA 19.

न चक्षुर निद्रियाभ्याम् ॥ १९ ॥

**Na Chakshu ranindriya bhyam.**

This is not possible to the eye or the mind. (It is possible to the remaining four senses.)

Thus the kinds of perception of indeterminable objects are 48 i. e. the 4 senses can each know as indeterminable thing in its 12 aspects of *Bahu*, etc

Thus the total number of kinds of sensitive knowledge is 288+48=336.

## SUTRA 20

श्रुतमति पूर्वद्वनेके द्वादश भेदम् ॥ २० ॥

**Shrutam matipurvam dvyaneka dvadasha bhedom.**

*Shruta* or Scriptural knowledge is always preceded by sensitive knowledge. It is of two kinds, one of which has twelve and the other many divisions.

A man hears the word Ship this is sensitive-knowledge.

The sound raises the qualities of a Ship in his mind, as he may have read or heard of them, this is Scriptural knowledge.

It is of two kinds अंग प्रविष्ट *Anga-pravishta* contained in the *Angas*. There are 12 *Angas*.

*Angas-Vahya*, out of the *Angas*. These non-*Anga* Scriptures are of many kinds.

*Shruta* literally means that which is heard (*Sri* to hear). Scriptural knowledge is of two kinds.

(1) Verbal, lettered (अक्षरात्मक *Aksharatmaka*)

(2) Non-verbal, letterless (अक्षररहित *Anaksharatmaka*)

Verbal scriptural knowledge is derived from words which are composed of letters (अक्षर *Akshara*), spoken or written; as when the eye sees the written word or the ear hears the Spoken word "soul". The seeing and hearing gives us merely sensitive knowledge (*Mati jnana*). What more we think about the meaning and connotation of the word "soul" is scriptural knowledge. It is called verbal, because it is derived from our sensitive knowledge of the word "soul",

Non-verbal scriptural knowledge is derived from all kinds of sensitive knowledge except those kinds which can be reduced to words written or spoken. You feel cold and, the knowledge of coldness is sensitive knowledge by means of touch of the skin. If you do not like it and infer that it is unpleasant, it is non-verbal scriptural knowledge. It is derived from your knowledge or feeling of cold, which cannot be reduced to a mere word, written or spoken.

Verbal scriptural knowledge is possible only in rational beings. All the irrationals have only non-verbal scriptural knowledge. Their sensitive knowledge also is confined to perception (*Āvagraha*) by all the 5 senses except the eye.

The rationals have non-verbal scriptural knowledge also.

Verbal scriptural knowledge is also called *Shabdajñana* or *Shabdajña*, produced by words. Non-verbal scriptural knowledge is also called *Ljñgajñamyā* or *Lingajña* produced by signs (*Gommatasāra*, *Jyā Kanda*, *Gāthā* 314).

### THE ANCIENT JAINA SACRED LITERATURE

The knowledge of a *Śrūta* (श्रुत) may be of things which are contained in the *Angas* (Sacred books of the Jainas) or of things outside the *Angas*. There are 64 root letters of the alphabet or representations of sounds. Of these 33 are consonants, 27 vowels, (e. i. slight, long and prolonged, 3 kinds of each of the 6 vowels, and mixed Sounds, *anusvara visarga kh kkh hp hph*) which help in the formation of Compound letters). The total number of possible combinations of these 64 simple letters into Compound of 2, 3, 4, or more upto are the letters (Simple and Compound) of *Śrūta* in its entirety. This letters in a middle foot (क्रमगण) of the *Pañcamagama* gives us the number of *reet Padas* 9 of the *Angas*, as 11, 28, 35, 80, 500. The remainder 8. 10 80, 175 gives us the letters of that part of *Śrūta* which is not contained in the *angas*. This part is divided into 14 *Prakīrnaka*, such as *Dasa*, *Vaikalika*, *Uttaradhayan* &c.

### SUTRA 21

भावप्रत्ययोऽवधिदेवतारकानाम् ॥२१॥

**Bhava pratyayoavadhīr deva narakānam.**

Birth-born visual knowledge (is in-born) in celestial and hellish beings.

The *Dravyas* are 6 ; नील, पुद्गल, धर्म, अधर्म, आकाश और काल

Celestial and hellish beings have visual knowledge by birth and they have it till death, just as human beings have sensitive and scriptural knowledge. Celestial and hellish beings have sensitive and scriptural knowledge also.

## SUTRA 22

क्षयोपशम निमित्तः षडविकल्पःशेषाणाम् ॥२२॥

**Kshayopashama nimittah Shad vikalpah Sheshnam.**

(The other kind of Visual or direct material knowledge is) of six kinds (and it) arises from the part destruction, part subsidence and part operation (of the *Karmas* which obscure Visual or direct material knowledge) (This is acquired by the others, i.e., by human and sub-human beings, who are possessed of mind).

This is called गुणप्रत्यय *Guna-pratyaya* or acquired by merit as distinguished from in-born Visual knowledge.

Its 6 kinds are —

अनुगमि *Anugami* Accompanying Visual knowledge. That which goes with one to another place or even another incarnation

अनुनगमि *Ananugami* Non-Accompanying Visual knowledge That which does not go with one, but is lost.

वर्द्धमान *Varddhamana*. Increasing That which goes on increasing.

हीनमान *Hiyamana* Decreasing. That which goes on decreasing.

अवस्थित *Avasthita*, Steadfast. That which retains the extent which it had when it arose

अनवस्थित *Anavasthita*. Changeable That which increases sometimes and decreases on other

These 6 kinds are due to the greater or less purity and intensity of right belief, etc.

Visual knowledge is also of 3 kinds —

(1) देशादधि *Desha Avadhi*. Partial Visual knowledge This also is *Anavasthita*, changeable

(2) परमादधि *Parama Avadhi*. High visual knowledge

(3) सर्वादधि *Sarva Avadhi* Full Visual knowledge

These two extend upto Perfect knowledge. They are never *Ananugami* non-accompanied-nor-*Hiyamana*, decreasing.

Partial Visual knowledge is fallible, the remaining two are infallible In these two there is no wrong belief or vowlessness (e.g. *Gommatasara, Jwa Kanda, Gatha 374*).

### SUTRA 23

ऋजुविपुलमतिमनःपर्यायः ॥२३॥

**Riju Vipulamati manah Paryayah.**

Mental knowledge (is of two kinds) —

ऋजुमति *Rijumati* Simple direct knowledge of complex mental things e.g. of what a man is thinking of now along with what he has thought of it in the past and will think of it

The thoughts which can be directly known by mental knowledge, must relate to matter. Simple mental knowledge is of 3 kinds according as the subject of it is the matter and form of thought about the simple activity of body, mind and speech which has been thought of in the mind of another (see J K 438). It knows the material objects of all the three times, past, present and future thought of by any soul in the present. Complex mental knowledge knows what has been thought of in the past and will be thought of in the future (J. K 40). It is of 6 kinds as it knows matter and form of thought about simple and complex activity of body, mind and speech thought of by another (J K. 439)

### SUTRA 24

विशुद्ध प्रति पाताभ्याम् तत्त्विवेशः ॥२४॥

**Vishuddha Prati patabhyam tadviवेशah.**

Their differences ( are as to ) purity ( and ) infallibility.

### SUTRA 25

विशुद्ध क्षेत्रस्वामि स्वामि विषयोऽध्यां वधि मनः पर्यायः ॥२५॥

**Vishuddh Kshetra swami vishayobhyam vadhi manah paryayah-**

Between Visual and Mental knowledge the differences relate to their purity, place, person of inherence and subject-matter.

## SUTRA 26

मति श्रुत्योर्निबन्धो द्रव्यस्य सर्वं पर्यायस्य ॥२६॥

**Mati shrutyo nirbandho dravyasya Sarva paryayasya.**

The subject-matter of Sensitive and Scriptural knowledge, is all the six substances but not in all their modifications.

## SUTRA 27

रूपिदवा वधेः ॥२७॥

**Rupishva vadheb**

Matter ( and embodied soul are the subject-matter) of Visual ( knowledge, but not in all their modifications. )

## SUTRA 28

तदनन्त भाजा मनः पर्ययस्य ॥२८॥

**Tadananta bhaja manah paryayasya.**

The infinitesimal part or the subtlest form of that (which can be known by the highest visual-knowledge, is the subject-matter) of mental-(knowledge)

*Sarva avadhi* or full visual knowledge knows one atom

*Ripu mati*, simple mental knowledge knows an infinitesimal part of an atom i.e., an infinitesimal degree of its attributes. This degree is called *Avibhaya prachicheda* or an infinitesimal part of its constituents. Complete mental knowledge ( विपुला मति *Vipula mati* ) knows an infinitesimal part of the subject-matter of simple mental knowledge. ( See also Chapter V, Sutra 10)

## SUTRA 29

सर्वं द्रव्य पर्यायेषु केवलस्य ॥२९॥

**Sarva dravya paryayesu kevalashya.**

( The subject matter ) of perfect knowledge ( is ) all the substances ( and all their ) modifications,

## SUTRA 30

एक दीनि भाजानि युगपदेकस्मिन्न चतुभ्यः ॥३०॥

**Ekadini bhajani yugapade kasminna Chatubhyah.**

Beginning from the first onwards in one (should) at a time as to their distribution (there can be found) upto four (kinds of knowledge).

All mundane souls except the omniscient always have at least two, i. e., sensitive and scriptural knowledge.

## SUTRA 31

मति श्रुताऽवधयो विपर्ययश्च ॥३१॥

**Mati Shruta vadhayo viparyayaścha.**

And Sensitive (*Mati*) scriptural (*Shruta*) and Visual (*avadhi*) (knowledge are also) wrong (knowledge)

It is called "wrong" because unless there is right belief, knowledge cannot be called right. It is characterised by —

*Sanshaya* doubt (This is formed in sensitive and Scriptural, but never in Visual knowledge)

*Viparyaya*, perversity mistake, opposite of truth, (this is found in Visual knowledge also) and *Anadhyavaya*, wrong knowledge caused by carelessness indifference or contusion



## SUTRA 32

सदसतोरत्रिशेषाद्यद्वच्छोपालवधेरन्तमत्तवत् ॥ ३२ ॥

**Sadasato ravisesadya drichhopa labdhe runmattavat.**

From lack of discrimination of the real, and the unreal, (the soul with wrong knowledge) like a lunatic, knows things according to his own whims.

Wrong knowledge may be —

- (1) कारण विपर्यय, *Karana viparyaya*, mistaking the cause of a thing, as that the passions are primarily caused by matter, whereas they are the thought activity of the soul of which Karmas are an auxiliary cause
  - (2) भेदभेद विपर्यय, *Bheda bheda viparyaya*, perverse confusion of cause and effect, mistaking the true relation of cause and effect, holding separation in identical and identity in really separate things, as holding that attributes and their substances are separate, and
  - (3) स्वभावा विपर्यय, *Swabhava viparyaya*, mistake in the nature or character of a thing. As idealists believing that form and colour are nothing, they exist only in knowledge.
- विपर्यय, *Viparyaya* is also of 2 kinds

- (1) सहज *Sahaja*, mistake arising by one's own self, without any preaching of another.

All are Sahaja except the next

- (2) श्रुति, *Aharva*, mistake due to another's preaching, this is wrong scriptural knowledge caused by sensitive knowledge through the ears

So much for Pramana

## SUTRA 33

नेगमसंग्रहव्यवहारमुक्तमण्डमगिन्दैवश्रुता जयाः ॥ ३३ ॥

**Naigama Sangraha Vyavaharariju Sutra sabda Samabhirudhai Vambhuta nayah**

The points of view (are) Figurative, general, distributive, actual descriptive, specific, active.



Note 1. *Dravyārthika* or *Samanya*, substantial, *Utsarga*, *Anuyvritti*, relating to the substance. Its sub-kinds are :-

1. *Naigama*, Figurative, Not literal. Taking something for granted. Speaking of a past or future event as a present one. Speaking of a thing in hand, as a completed fact. It is of 3 kinds relating to past, present and future. e. g., saying on Divali day, "Lord Mahavira attained liberation to-day". The present is used figuratively of the past. Similarly for future or present. A man is going to book his passage, to Australia, and being asked where he is going, he says "To Australia" or when the cook is lighting fire and some one asks her what she is doing, she may answer, "I am cooking", although she is only preparing to cook.
2. *Sangraha*, General or Common. A class as a whole. A class of things, denoted by the same word. As *Dravya* applied to six *dravyas*, man, tiger etc.
3. *Vyavahara*, Distributive. To divide or separate a general term into its classes, orders, kinds and species. *Dravya* is distributed into six *dravyas*, souls into mundane and liberated.

Note II. *Paryayartika* or *Vivēsa*, *Apavada Vyavritti* Model, relating to the modification of substances. This is :

4. *Riju Sutra*, i. e., the actual condition at (1) A particular instant and (2) for a long time. They are called *sukshma* fine and *sthula* gross respectively, e. g., a soul with a good thought for an instant, or a man with human condition for a life time.
5. *Sabda*, Descriptive. This includes grammatical correctness and propriety of expression. From this point of view we can use the present for the past tense, plural for the singular number, feminine for the masculine gender, etc. At the use of the present tense in describing the events which happened in the past, e. g. In 1066 A. D. We see the Normans attack the Anglo Saxons or conquer their country, or the common use of "you" for one man; or a boat which is generally called "she" to be named, Lord Nelson or

king Edward etc Or asking your boy: have you been to school? "you" in grammar refers to more than one.

' *Samabhirudha*, specific, Giving a word, one fixed meaning out of several which it has had. As "nut" by common consent of leaders of fashion and society has come to mean an extra smart man. '*Dreadnought* which means the condition of fearing nothing, has come to mean a worship of a particular type.

7. *Evambhuta*, Active. Restricting a name to the very activity which is conducted by the name. e.g. calling *Strat-ford-on-Avon* by that name, only so long as the town stands on the banks of the river *Avon*, and not after that, calling 'tripod' as such, only when it has got three legs to support it.

Note III. *Naya* may be distinguished from *Nikshepa*. *Nikshepa* is an aspect of the thing itself *Naya* is a point of view from which we make some statement about the thing The distinction is exceedingly fine at times, e.g. between *Dravya nikshepa* and *Naigamanaya*. In *Dravya nikshepa* we attribute its past qualities to the object in the present, e.g., calling an exiled king, a king. We do the same in *Naigama Naya* But the distinction is this: In *Dravya Nikshepa*, we know that the man has been a king in the past, the fact of his having been a king is the aspect of the man's personality which is denoted by *Dravya Nikshepa* *Naigama Naya* only refers to the mode of our speech, to the point of view from which we make the statement that he is king If we consider the statement merely as such, its point of view is *Naya*, if we consider the fact which justifies the point of view it is *Nikshepa*.

Note IV. Of the 7 *Nayas*, the first four *Naigama*, *Saṅgraha*, *Vyavahara*, *Riju Sutra* are *Arthanaya* object stand point i.e., stand points relating to the object considered The remaining three *Sabda*, *Samabhirudha* and *Evambhuta* are *Sabda naya* word stand-point, i.e. relate to the word by which object is expressed

Note V *Paryaya* or modification is —

(1) *Sahabhavi*, which co-exists with the substance always. It is called *Guna* or attribute also, and (2) *Krama bhavi*,

which succeeded another modification. It is *Paryaya* proper.

Note VI. Each of the seven stand-points has a greater extent, or denotation than the one which follows it. *Naigama* has thus the greatest and *Ehambhuta* the least extent. *Naigama* deals with real and unreal. *Sangraha* with real only. *Vyavahara* only with a part of the real. *Rīju Sūtra* with only the present condition of a part of the real. *Sabda* with only the expression of the real, *Samabhirudha* with only that particular expression, which applies to the thing in its present activity.

Note also that each of the seven *naayas* is dependent on the one preceding it.

The Principle stand points are 7. But in practice, the stand points can obviously be many more, according to the point of view from which the thing is considered or spoken of.

The other systems of philosophy recognise the following topics:

- (1) *Bauddhas* They recognise the 5 *Skandhas*, (*Khandhas*) or Aggregate, or groups.  
*Vijnana*, Consciousness  
*Pedana* Feeling  
*Samjna* Perception recognising and naming  
*Samskara*, (*Samskārā*) So other mental accompaniment specially will that arise when consciousness is submitted.  
*Rupa*, Material or body
- (2) *Naiyayikas* 16 *Padārthas* namely *Dravya* *Prameya* *Sangsa*, Doubt *Prasanga* *Uristanta* *Sidhanta* *Avayava* *Tarka* *Yogya* *Padā* *Jalpa* *Vitanda*, *Hetva* *lihasa* *Chhala* *Jati* *Vigrahahana*
- (3) *Vaisesika* 7 *Padārthas* namely *Dravya* *Guna* *Karma* *Samanya* *Visesa* *Samavaya* *Abhava*
- (4) *Samkha* 25 *Tatvas* namely *Prakriti* *Pradhana* *Ahamkara*, *Karamendriya*  
 5. *Jhana-endriya*  
 5 *Mana*.  
*Tanmatras*, (*Sabda*, *Sparsa*, *rupa*, *rasa* *gandha*)  
 5 *Bhutas* (Earth, water, fire, air space) *Purusa* *Nirvikara* self, pure and perfect soul.

## दूसरा अध्याय

### CHAPTER II

#### SUTRA 1.

ओपशमिकक्षयिकौ भावौ मिश्रश्च जीवस्य  
स्वतत्त्वमौदयिक पारिणामिकौ च ॥

**Aupashamikakshayikau bhavau mishrascha jivasya  
svattatvamaudayika parinamikau cha:**

The soul's own thatness, i. e., thought-activity (is of five kinds).

(1) ओपशमिक *Aupashamika*, Subsidential, (That which rises from the subsidence of a *Karma* of the deluding kind)

(2) क्षयिक *Kshayika*, destructive, Purified (That which rises from the destruction of *Karma's* e.g., the 4 घातिका *Ghatiya*, destructive *Karma's*)

(3) मिश्र *Mishra*, Mixed (i. e., अओपशमिक *Kshayopashamika*, destructive subsidential, that which rises from the partial destruction subsidence and operation of destructive *Karmas*).

(4) औदयिक *Audayika*, operative (that which rises from the operation i. e., fruition of *Karmas*).

(5) पारिणामिक *Parinamika*, Natural (The soul's own natural thought-activity, independent of *Karmas*)

The first four of these thought-nature have reference to their various causes.

The 5th is the own, pure nature of the soul, which is always there, but in an impure condition, because of its being in conjunction and co-existence with three other thought-natures viz: those due to the subsidence (*aupashamika*), destruction subsidence and operation (*Kshayopashamika*) or to the operation of *Karmas* (*Audayika*).

Here it is necessary to understand the distinction between 8 kinds of *Karmas*

There are 2 main classes.

(1) घातिका *Ghatiya* or Destructive *Karmas*, which attach and effect the very nature of the soul.

(2) अघातिया *Aghatiya*, or non-destructive *Karmas*, which do not effect the very nature of the soul. They are feeling, body family and age *Karmas* i. e., the वेदनीय *Vedanīya*, नाम *nama*, गोत्र *Gotra*, and आयु *Ayu* *Karmas* respectively.

*Vedanīya* or "Feeling," the pleasure and pain-bearing *Karmas* are also *Aghatiya*. Pain and pleasure are illusory, more or less, because they are due to *Vedanīya* acting with *Mohaniya* Deluding *Karmas* and it is then only that the thought-nature of the soul is affected

The *Ghatiya Karmas* are four:—

(1) ज्ञानावरणीय *Jnanavarṇīya*. Knowledge-obscuring. It simply obscures knowledge.

(2) दर्शनावरणीय *Daśhanavarṇīya*, conation-obscuring. It simply obscures conation (*Daśhana*).

(3) मोहनीय *Mohaniya*, Deluding. It intoxicates the soul. It is a sort of General of the enemy, host of *Karmas*. It affects both right-belief and right-conduct. It is like a solution of both right-belief and right-conduct. It is like a solution of chalk in water. The water is clouded and opaque. The solution may settle down and the opacity being lost, transparency may be restored to the water, or by processes the chalk may be entirely separated from the water and permanent transparency obtained. Therefore this *Karmas* can merely subside or partially subside or partially subside and partially be destroyed, or be entirely destroyed. This alone can subside in the proper sense of the world.

(4) अन्तराय *Antaraya*, Obstructive *Karmas*. The 5 thought-natures are, as they are found,—

I. In mundane soul, here there is उदय *Udaya*, operation of *Karmas* in all. Of course a mundane soul is one bound with *Karmas*.

The thought-nature of soul is of 4 kinds, according as it is the result of—

1. Subsidence merely.
2. Destruction merely.
3. Operation merely.
4. All three combined, of the *Karmas*.

and

5. Its own natural thought-activity, i. e., its soulness and its capacity or incapacity of being liberated.

II. In Liberated souls there is no *Udaya of Karmas*, because there are no *Karmas* to operate. The soul rests in its own pure nature, in its own thought activity.

The कश्चिकभाष *Kshayikabhava* is identical with this, when all the *Karmas* have been destroyed. If only a few are destroyed, e.g. only right-belief-deluding *Karmas*, the mundane soul has हश्चिकभाष *Kshayikabhava* proper, which, of course, is not identical with *Parinamikabhava*.

Thus Liberated souls have 2 thought-activities.—

1. That which arises from the destruction of all *Karmas*, and
2. Their own pure self-thought-activity. *Bhava* is the nature of the soul as affected by *Karmas*. In its own pure nature it has its own *bhava*, the *Parinamika*. But in mundane souls, the soul is found bound with matter. This matter is constantly changing. The change corresponds with a change in the soul also. The character of this change is the cause of the different *Bhavas* in the soul.

*Note*— That of five thought-natures] each one of the first 3 is found in innumerable-fold souls compared with the one preceding it. In the 4th and 5th are found infinitely more souls than the third. Thus Subsidential thought-nature is found in the least and *Parinamika* in the greatest number of souls.

*Note*—That the first 2 natures can arise only in a soul capable of attaining liberation, never in any other

*Note*—That there is subsidence only of the deluding *Karma* (*Mohamya*), and never of any other. Destruction of all the eight. Destruction subsidence only of four destructive *Karmas*, Operation of all the eight

## SUTRA 2

द्विनावाष्टादशैकविंशतित्रिभेदा यथाक्रमम् ॥ २ ॥

**Dvinawastadasaikavinsatitribheda Yathakramam.**

( They are ) of two, nine, eighteen twenty-one and three kinds respectively.



## SUTRA 3

सम्यक्त्वचारित्रे ॥ ३ ॥

Samyaktvacharitre.

( The two kinds are ) belief (and) conduct.

*Note* --(1) (औपशमिक सम्यक्त्व *Aupashamika Samyaktva* ), subsidential right-belief, i. e., right-belief due to the subsidence of Darshana-mohaniya, right-belief-deluding *Karmas*, and the four अनन्तानुबन्धि कषाय *Ananta-nubandhi-Kasayas*, i. e., anger, pride, deceit, greed, which feed these *Karmas* i. e., the error-feeding-passions

(2) औपशमिकचारित्र *Aupsamika charitra*, subsidential right conduct i. e., right conduct caused by the subsidence of चरित्र मोहनीय *Charitra-mohaniya*, right-conduct-deluding *Karmas*

Subsidential belief arises as follows :--

(1) In hellish beings, It can arise a little less than 48 minutes ( one *antarmuhurta* ) after their birth by उपपद *upapada* instantaneous rise The external causes are

Up to 3rd hell, memory of past incarnations

Hearing the preachings by friendly celestials visiting them.

Suffering too much pain.

The rest of hells have only 2, i. e., the above leaving out Preaching.

(2) In-human beings, it can arise from 4 to 8 days after their birth. The external causes are

Memory.

Preaching.

Sight of *Tirthankara's* image.

(3) In human beings, 8 years after birth The causes are same as in sub-human beings.

(4) In celestial beings, one *antarmuhurta* after their birth. The external causes are :

Up to 12th heaven, Memory,

Preaching,

Sight of *Tirthankara's* glory.

Sight of Supernatural powers of celestial beings.

From 12th to 16th, heaven, the above 4 except the last. In the 9 *graveyakas*, the first two only, Memory and Preaching.

SUTRA 4

ज्ञानदर्शनदानलाभभोगोपभोगवीर्याणि च ।४॥

**Jnanadarsanadanalabha bhogopabhogaviryani cha.**

(The nine kinds are:) Knowledge, conation, charity, gain, enjoyment, re-enjoyment, power and (belief and conduct).

1. क्षयिक ज्ञान (*Kshayikajñana*), Destructive, purified, or perfect knowledge due to the destruction of knowledge obscuring (*Jnanavar-niya*) *Karmas*.

2. क्षयिक दर्शन (*Kshayikadarshana*), Destructive, purified or perfect conation due to the destruction of the *Karmas* which obscure it, 1. e, of दर्शना वर्याणि कर्म *Darshana-varniya Karmas*.

3. क्षयिक दान (*Kshayikadana*) Destructive or purified charity Bestowal of fearlessness etc due to destruction or purification caused by destruction of charity-obstructive *Karmas*, e. g; the soul's, capacity of removing from all living beings, all kinds of apprehension of any veil as proceeding from himself. It is caused by the destruction of all *Karmas*, दानान्तराय *Danantraya*, which obstruct the exercise of this capacity

4. क्षयिक लाभ (*Kshayikalabha*), Destructive or purified gain. Infinite gain due to purification caused by the destruction of all *Labh-antaraya* or gain obstructive *Karmas* e. g; a man with perfect knowledge (1. e केवली omniscient Kevali) always assimilates the mole-cules of fine quasikarmic, matter

5. क्षयिक भोग (*Kshayika bhoga*). Destructive or purified enjoy-ment Infinite attainment of consumable objects due to purification caused by the destruction of all भोगान्तराय *Bhogantaraya* or enjoyment-obstructive-*Karmas* This becomes the cause of miraculous manifesta-tions such as the shower of flowers, by celestial beings etc

6. क्षयिक उपभोग (*Kshayikaupabhoga*). Destructive or purified re-enjoyment Infinite attainment of nonconsumable objects due to purification caused by the destruction of all उपभोगान्तराय *Upabhogant-araya*, re-enjoyment obstructive *Karma*. This becomes the cause of the miraculous throne, canopy etc; etc.

7. क्षयिक वीर्य (*Kshayikavirya*) Destructive or purified power. Infinite power due to purification caused by the destruction of all वीर्यान्तराय *Viryantaraya* or power-obstructive *Karmas*.

8. क्षयिक सम्यक्त्व (*Kshayika Samyaktva*). Destructive, Purified or perfect-right-belief 1. e; perfect belief due to the destruction of three sorts of right-belief-deluding *Karmas* (i. e; of *Karmas* causing



मिथ्यात्व *Mithyatva*, wrong belief, सम्यक्त्वमिथ्यात्व मिश्रप्रकृति *Samyaktva Mithyatva* mixed right-wrong belief and सम्यक्त्व प्रकृतिमिथ्यात्व *Samyaktva Prakriti-Mithyatva*, right-belief clouded by the slightest wrong belief) and the four अनन्तानुबन्धिकायाः *Anantanubandhi Kashayas* i. e. the error-feeding passions of Anger, Pride, Deceit and Greed which feed the above.

9 क्षयिक चरित्र (*Kshayikacharitra*). Destructive, purified or perfect, right conduct, due to purification caused by the total destruction of right conduct-deluding Karmas, Charitra Mohaniya.

### SUTRA 5.

अज्ञानाज्ञानदर्शनलब्धयश्चतुस्त्रिपञ्चेदा सम्यक्त्वचारित्रसंयमासंयमाश्च ॥५॥  
*Jnanasnadarsanalabhayaschatustritripanchabhedah Samyaktvacharitrasanyamasamamamscha.*

(The 18 kinds are)—4 kinds of (right) Knowledge, 3 wrong Knowledge 3 conations, 5 attainments, right-belief, conduct, and control-non-control.

Note-K-Kshaypashamika i e., Destructive-subsidentia, Kshayopasham, is destruction-subsidence of सर्वघाति स्पष्टक *Sarvaghati spardhaka* i e., of Karmic-matter which totally obscures, and the operation of देशघातिस्पष्टक *Deshaghati spardhaka*, i e Karmic-matter the operation of which obscures only partially.

- (4) क्षयोपशमिकज्ञान (*Kshayopashamika Jnana*). i e, K-right- knowledge (it is of) 4 (kinds)-1. Mati, Sensitive, 2 Sruta Scriptural, 3. Avadhi, Visual and 4. Manahparyaya, mental).
- (3) क्षयोपशमिकज्ञान (K) Ajnana, (i. e., K. wrong knowledge. It is of 3 kinds 1 कुमति *Kumati*, wrong-sensitive knowledge. 2 कुश्रुत *Ku-shruta*, wrong-scriptural knowledge, and 3 कुश्रुति *Ku-shruti*, wrong visual knowledge The last is also called विभङ्गज्ञान *Vi-bhanga Jnana*, wrong visual knowledge
- (3) क्षयोपशमिकदर्शन (K) *Darshana*, (i. e., K Conation) It is of three kinds . 1. चक्षु *Chakshu*, Ocular, by mean of the eye.  
 2. अचक्षु *Achakshu*, non-ocular, by means of the other senses and mind.  
 3 अश्रुति *Avadhi*, visual; They precede their respective knowledge.
- (5) क्षयोपशमिकलब्धि (K) *Labdhi*, i. e., K. attainment, acquisition. It is of 5 kinds:—  
 1. दान *Dana*, charity of 4 kinds-food, medicine, knowledge and fearlessness.  
 2. लाभ *Labha*, gain.

3. भोग *Bhoga*, enjoyment of consumable things.
4. उपभोग *Upabhoga*, re-enjoyment or enjoyment of non-consumable things.
- (5) वीर्य *Virya*, power.

All these are imperfect, because they are due only to partial destruction subsidence and operation of their respective अन्तराय *Antaraya*, obstructive *karmas*.

(1) दायोपसमिकसम्बन्ध (K) *Samyaktva* i. e., K. right-belief. This is imperfect because it is due to the destruction or subsidence of मिथ्यात्व *Mithyatva*, and सम्यक्त्वमिथ्यात्व *Samyaktvamithyatva*, i. e., wrong, and mixed right-wrong-belief deluding *Karmas*, and of the four error-feeding passions, anger, pride, deceit, and greed called अनन्तानुबन्धिभाव *Anantanubandhi Kashaya* and which feed the above *Karmas* and by the operation of सम्यक्त्व प्रकृतमिथ्यात्व *Samyaktva-prakritimithyatva*, i. e., right-belief slightly clouded by wrong belief.

(1) दायोपसमिकचरित्र (K) *Charitra* i. e., K. right conduct. Imperfect because it is due to the partial destruction, subsidence and operation of right-conduct deluding *Karmas* and

(1) दायोपसमिकसमामयम (K) *Samyama-Samyama* (i. e.) K. control-non-control. Taking only partial vows, It is due to the destruction or subsidence of अनन्तानुबन्धि *Anantanubandhi*, error-feeding and अप्रत्याख्यान *Apratyakhyana*, partial vow preventing कषाय 18 *Kashayas* or the passions of anger, pride deceit and greed, and by the operation of the remaining kinds of passions.

## SUTRA 6

गतिकषायीलंगमिथ्यादर्शनाऽज्ञानाऽसंयताऽसिद्धलेश्याश्चतुश्चतुस्त्र्येकैकैकै  
कषड्भेदाः ॥६॥

**Gatikashayalingamithyadarshanainanasamyatasiddhaleshya  
schatuschatrustyeakaikaikaikasadbhedah**

(The 21 are) :—

- 4 kinds of condition,
- 4 passions,
- 3 sexes,
- 1 wrong-belief,
- 1 ignorance,
- 1 vowlessness,
- 1 non-liberation

6 points.

The 21 kinds of thought-activity due to the operation of *Karmas*, relate to:—

1. गति *Gati*. Condition of existence, of 4 kinds—
  - (1) नरक *Naraka*, hellish
  - (2) तिर्य्यञ्च *Tiryancha*, sub human.
  - (3) मनुष्य *Manushya*, human, and
  - (4) देव *Deva*, celestial.
2. कषाय *Kashayas*. Passions of 4 kinds.
  - (1) क्रोध *Krodha*, anger ;
  - (2) मान *Mana*, pride ;
  - (3) माया *Maya*, deceit; and
  - (4) लोभ *Lobha*, greed.
3. लिंग *Linga*. Sexes of 3 kinds .
  - (1) स्त्रीवेद *Stri-veda*, Feminine inclinations
  - (2) पुरुषवेद *Purushaveda*, Masculine inclinations .
  - (3) नपुंसकवेद *Napunsaka veda*, Common or neuter inclination
  - (4) मिथ्यादर्शन *Mithya-darshana* wrong belief
  - (5) अज्ञान *Ajnana*. Ignorance.
  - (6) असंयत *Asanyata*. Vowlessness or non-controls
  - (6) असिद्ध *Asiddha* Unliberatedness
  - (8) लेश्या *Leshya* Through points of 6 kinds —
    - (1) कृष्ण *Krishna*, black,
    - (2) नील *Nila*, blue,
    - (3) कापोत *Kapota*, grey,
    - (4) पीत *Pita*, yellow,
    - (5) पद्म *Padma*, pink, and
    - (6) शुक्ल *Sukla*, white

### SUTRA 7

जीवमव्याप्तिव्यवृत्तानि च ॥७॥

**Jivabbavyabhavytvani cha**

(The 3 kinds of the soul's natural thought-activity are:)

1. जीवत्व *Jivatva*. Consciousness, livingness, or soulness in a soul.
  - (2) भव्यत्व *Bhavyatva*. Capacity of being liberated.
  3. अभव्यत्व *Abhavyatva* Incapacity of becoming liberated.
- Pure *Jivatva* जीवत्व is limited to the, सिद्ध *Siddhas*. Mundane

souls must have *Jivatva* but alleged with *Bhavyatva* on *Abhavyatva*. These 3 are peculiar to Jiva. च "cha", refers to those attributes which Jiva has in common with non-Jivas, as:—

अस्तित्व *Astitva*. Isness.

द्रव्य *Dravyatva*. Being a substance, changeability.

प्रदेशत्व *Pradeshatva*. Capacity to occupy space; etc., etc. (see Chapter V, Sutra 2.)

## SUTRA 8

उपयोगो लक्षणम् ॥ ८ ॥

**Upayoga lakshanam**

The Lakshna or differentia of soul (is) Upayoga, attention, consciousness, attentiveness.

लक्ष्य *Lakshya* is that of which the differentia is.

लक्ष्य *Lakshna* is: अनात्मभूत *Atambhuta*, inseparable, and अनात्मभूत *Anatambhuta*, separable. As *Jivatva* is an inseparable but a celestial condition of existence is a separable quality of the soul

## SUTRA 9

स द्विविधो ऽष्टचतुर्भेदः ॥ ९ ॥

**Sa dvividhostachaturbhedah,**

(Attention is of) 2 kinds which is subdivided into 8 and 4 kinds respectively .

ज्ञानोपयोग *Jnanapyoga*-knowledge-attention. It is of 8 kinds, relating to 5 kinds of right and 3 kinds of wrong knowledge.

दर्शनोपयोग *Darshanopayoga*, conation-attention. It is of 4 kinds relating to 4 kinds of conation, viz, *Chakshu*, *Achakshu*, *Avadhi* and *Kevala*, i. e., ocular, non-ocular, visual and perfect, conation respectively),

उपयोग *Upayoga*, is a modification of consciousness, which is an essential attribute of the soul. Thus attentiveness is a kind of consciousness, Consciousness is a characteristic of the knower, the soul, consciousness is not mere passive or potential knowledge, nor is it merely a capacity to know, It is active. It is related to the self. It means that the soul is aware that it conates or knows something about itself or the non-self. Attentiveness is only the direction or tendency of consciousness to apprehend or comprehend a

thing. If it is directed merely to an awareness that something is present to it but cannot be described. It is *Darshanopayoga*, if it is directed to know this something definitely, it is ज्ञानोपयोग *Jnanopayoga*.

Attentiveness is essential to conation and knowledge. There can be no conation or knowledge without attention. There can be conation without knowledge. There can be no knowledge without ultimate conation of some kind or other. There can be no attention without consciousness.

Thus the stages of knowledge may be received to be consciousness, Conation-Attention, Conation, Knowledge-Attention and knowledge.

### SUTRA 10

संसारिणो मुक्ताश्च ॥ १० ॥

*Samsarino muktascha.*

(They are of 2 kinds:)

संसारि *Samsari*, mundane and मुक्त *Mukta*, Liberated souls. *Mundance* [souls wander in 5 kinds of परिवर्तन *Parivartana*, cycle of wandering:—

(1) द्रव्यपरिवर्तन *Dravya-parivartana*; matter cycle.

It is of two kinds, quasi-karmic and karmic नोकर्मा *No-karma*, quasi-karmic is the time which the soul takes in renewing exactly the same set of a particular number and quality of molecules, as it took once. Quasi-karmic.

कर्मा *Karma* or karmic, is the time taken in renewing exactly the same set of a particular number and quality of 8 karmas, as the soul took in once. The time taken in both of these is called one matter cycle or द्रव्य *Dravya* or पुद्गल, *Pudgala*, परिवर्तन *Parivartna*. For example a soul takes on a body to day, with its quasi-karmic and karmic matter. It goes on changing both. When in the course of its changes, it again chances to take on a similar body with similar quasi-karmic and karmic-matter, it is said to have completed one matter cycle (*Dravya-parivartana*).

(2) क्षेत्र परिवर्तन *Kshetra-Parivartna*. Space Cycle. The time taken by one soul in going once round every single point of space in the Universe consecutively beginning from the foot of Mount Meru.

(3) कालपरिवर्तन *Kalo parivartna*. Time Cycle, e. g., a soul is born in the first समय *Samaya*, or instant of an अवसर्पिणी *Avasarpini*, then in the 2nd *Samaya* of another (next or any other) *Avasarpini*, then in

the 3rd samaya of a third, and so on, till in the last samaya it is born in the last samaya of a new Avsarpini. Similarly it must be born in उत्तर्पिणी *Utsarpini*, eras. Then it must die in each samaya of the two eras like the above. The time taken to go through all this is a Time Cycle (*Kalaparivartna*).

(4) भवपरिवर्तन *Bhavaprivartna*. Incarnation Cycle, e.g., a soul is born in hell with the minimum age of 10,000 years. He is reborn again (after other births) in hell with 10,000 years age. This goes on as many times as there are samayas in 10,000 years. Then he is reborn there with an age of 40,000 years, and one samaya, then with an age of 10,000 years, and 2 samayas, and thus at every birth he adds one samaya till he is born with the maximum age of 33 सगर *Sagaras*. The time taken is called Hellish Cycle. Similarly with the Celestial Cycle, but there the minimum is 10,000 years and the maximum is only 31 Sagaras upto the 9th ग्रेवेयक *Graveyaka*.

In the Sub-human and human-Cycles the minimum is one अंतर्मुहूर्त *antarmahurta*, and the maximum is 3 पल्य *palyas*. The procedure is the same as in Hellish and Celestial Cycles.

The time taken in all these four cycles, is called one Incarnation Cycle.

(5) भावपरिवर्तन *Bhava-parivartana*. Thought Cycle In-numerable units of soul's योगस्थान, *Yoga-Sthana*, Vibratory activity, make one अनुभाग बन्ध *Anubhaga-bandha* स्थान *Adhyavasaya Sthana*, or a degree of the passion which determines intensity or bondage. In-numerable  $\times$  in-numerable, *Anubhaga-bandhas* make one कषाय *Kashaya* *Adhyavasaya Sthana*, i.e., one degree of passion which determines the duration of bondage. In-numerable  $\times$  in numerable *Kashaya*, etc., make one जघनस्थितिबन्ध *Jaghanya-sthiti-bandha*, 1 e., minimum duration of bondage in a rational wrong-believing person. This is अन्त, कोटी कोटी सगर *Antah crore  $\times$  crore sagars*. One स्थिति *Sthiti* needs that the soul should pass through every one of the in-numerable योगस्थान, *Yog-sthanas*, to earn one अनुभागबन्ध *Anubhaga-bandha* and then so on, to earn one *Sthiti*. Thus it should go up to the maximum duration of each one of the 8 Karmas, of course adding only one samaya at each step onwards from the minimum duration. When it has thus gone through the 8 *karmas* and their 148 divisions, it is said to have done one, Thought-Cycle (*Bhava-parivartana*)

In-numeral and Infinite numbers can be easily realised by a consideration of recurring decimals in dividing  $10'3\ 3\ 33$  ad inf, we get an infinite quotient, or of the famous relation of the circumference of

a circle to its diameter,  $\pi = 22/7$  or of the square root  $2(\sqrt{2})$ , which may be properly said to represent an in-numberable quotient. In the science of Arithmetic these are called "ir-rational" numbers.

### SUTRA 11

समनस्कामनस्काः ॥११॥

**Samanaskamanaskah.**

(The mudane souls are of 2 kinds:)

समनस्क *Samanaska*. Rational, those who have a mind, i. e., the faculty of distigushing right and wrong.

अमनस्क *Amanaska*. Ir-rational, those who have no mind.

मन *Mana*, mind in द्रव्यमन *dravya-mana*, objective mind. It is in the region of the हृदय *heart* like an 8 petalled flower made of मनोवर्ण *Manovargana*, or very fine mind molecules.

भावमन *Bhava-mana*, subjective mind is the soul's capacity to make use of the objective mind.

Subjective mind means the destruction subsidence of the *Karma* which obscures the quasi-sense or mind, (*no-Indriyaavarana Karma*), (See *Jiva Kanda of Gommatasara Gatha 659*)

The signs of rationality are :- capacity of receiving instruction (*Siksha*), understanding, actions (*Kriya*), preaching (*Upadesha*), and recitation (*alapa*). (J. K 660)

A rational soul-investigates before acting what ought or ought not to be done, distinguished between things as they are and as they are not in reality He also comes to you on being called by his name. (J. K. 661)

### SUTRA 12

संसारिणस्त्रसस्थावराः ॥१२॥

**Sansarinastrasathavarah.**

The mundane souls (are of 2 kinds from another point of view,)

त्रस *Trasa*, Mobile Many-sensed, i.e., having a body with more than one sence.

स्थवर *Sthavara*, Immobile, one-sensed, i. e., having only the sense of touch. Mobile souls are those which being in fear, have the capacity of moving away from the object of fear. Immobile souls do not have this capacity.

## SUTRA 13

पृथिव्यप्तेजोवायुवनस्पतयः स्थावराः ॥१३॥

**Prithivyaptejo vayu vanaspatayah sthavarah.**

Immobile (one sensed souls) (are of 5 kinds)

- (1) पृथ्वी *Prithvi*, earth-bodied;
- (2) अप *Ap*, water bodied,
- (3) तेज *teja*, fire bodied;
- (4) वायु *Vayu*, air-bodied, and
- (5) वनस्पति *Vanaspati*, Vegetable-bodied.

Each of these is considered in 3 aspects, e.g., the earth souls :-

Take earth-bodied -

(2) पृथ्वी कायिक *Prithvi-kayika*, as embodied in matter, as earth bodied soul.

(3) पृथ्वीकाय *Prithvi-kaya*, as material body, as, the body without soul. It is dead earth after the soul has left it.

(4) पृथ्वीजीव *Prithvi-jiva*, as an earth-soul, as the soul which is to be embodied in the earth, but is now in विग्रहगति *vigrahagati* or in transition from one existence to another Similarly *apajwa*, *apakaya* and *apakayika*, etc

The maximum size of the body of an earth, water, fire and air-soul is an innumerable part of a cubic finger. Therefore it is quite invisible. We see it only in a mass. Take a glass of fresh water. Every drop of it is a mass of many water-bodied souls. The many minute animalculae seem under the microscope are foreign or other souls. They are not water bodied souls. Water-bodied souls have water and that alone the matter of their bodies. Similarly the earth etc, souls

As to the forms, the bodies of earth, water, fire and air souls, they are respectively oval like a pea of masoora (seed), round like a drop of water, long cylindrical with pointed tips like a collection of needless. and oblong like a flog. (J.K. 22).

## SUTRA 14

द्वीन्द्रियादयस्त्रसाः

**Dvindriyadatastrasah**

(Mobile or many suited souls)

With 2 senses, etc., i.e.



With 3 senses

- " 4 "  
 " 5 " without mind, अमनस्क *Amanaska*, ir-rational  
 and  
 " " " with mind, समनस्क *Samanaska*, rational.

Note, on प्राण *Pranah*, vitalities. Vitality is a form of consciousness as manifested through a body of a mundane soul.

There are 10 kinds of *Prana*, of vitality, i.e., the 5 senses 3. powers of mind, body and speech; age and respiration.

The one sensed souls have 4 vitalities, viz, touch, power of body, age and respiration.

The two sensed souls add to these 4, the senses of taste and power of speech.

The three sensed souls add to these 6, the sense of smell

The four sensed souls add to these 7, the sense of sight

The five-sensed rational souls add to these 8, the sense of hearing

The five sensed irrational souls add to these 9, the power of mind

### SUTRA 15

पञ्चेन्द्रियाणि

**Panchendriyani.**

The senses are five,

### SUTRA 16

द्विविधानि ॥१६॥

**Dvividhani**

(They are of) 2 kinds:—

- (1) द्रव्येन्द्रिय *Dravyendriya*, objective-senses, sense-organs, and
- (2) भावेन्द्रिय *Bhavendriya*, subjective-senses, sense-faculties,

### SUTRA 17

निर्वृत्त्युपकरणो द्रव्येन्द्रियस् ॥१७॥

**Nirvṛtityupakaranedravvyendriyani.**

Objective senses or sense-organs (have a two-fold formation):—

- (1) निवृत्ति *Nirvriti*, (the organ itself, e. g., the pupil of the eye.)  
 (2) उपकरण *Upakarana*, (its Protecting environment, e. g., the eye-lid, etc.).

Each formation is of 2 kinds : अन्तरंग *Antaranga*, internal, and *Vahiranga* बहिरंग, external.

Internal organ means the soul itself which is co-extensive with and of the same form as the organ in which it incarnates.

External organ means the material organ which is permeated by the internal organ or the soul.

Internal environment, is the matter immediately surrounding the organ, e.g., the corner of the eye.

External environment is the matter which is not so immediately situated with reference to the organ, as the eye-lid.

### SUTRA 18

लब्ध्युपयोगौ भावेन्द्रियम् ॥१८॥

**Labdhyupayogobhavendriyam**

Bhavendriyas subjective sense, sense-faculties (are of 2 kinds:—

- (1) लब्धि *Labdhi*, (it is the attainment of manifestation of the sense faculty by the partial destruction, subsidence and operation of the knowledge-obscuring karma relating to that sense )  
 (2) उपयोग *Upayoga*, (the conscious attention of the soul directed to that sense.)

### SUTRA 19

स्पर्शनरसनघ्राणचक्षुः श्रोत्राणि ॥१९॥

**Sparsanarasanaghraṇa chakshuṣrotrāṇi.**

(The senses are )

स्पर्शन *Sparsana* Organ of Touch, i. e. the skin, the whole body.

रसन *Rasana*, „ Taste „ tongue.

घ्राण *Ghrana*, „ Smell „ nose.

चक्षु *Chakshu*, „ Sight „ eyes.

श्रोत्र *Shrotra*, „ Hearing „ ears.



## SUTRA 20

स्पर्शरसगन्धवर्णशब्दास्तद्वर्थाः ॥२०॥

**Sparsarasagandhvarnasabdastadardhah.**

The functions (of the 5 senses are to determine the various kinds of) touch, taste, smell, colour, and sound (respectively).

स्पर्श *Sparsha*, Touch is of 8 kinds. उष्ण *Usna*, hot, शीत *Sita* Cold, रुक्ष *Ruksha*, rough, स्निग्ध *Smigdha*, Smooth, कोमल *Komala*, soft, कठोर *Kathora*, hard, लघु *Laghu*, light, and गुरु *Guru*, heavy.

रस *Rasa*, Taste, is of 5 kinds तिक्त *Tikta*, pungent, अमल *Amla*, acid, कटु *Katu*, bitter, मधुर *Madhur*, sweet, and कषय *Kasaya*, astringent.

गन्ध *Gandha*, Smell is of 2 kinds सुगन्ध *Sugandha*, sweet-smelling, fragrant, दुर्गन्ध *Durgandha*, bad-smelling, malodorous

वर्ण *Varna*, Colour is of 5 kinds कृष्ण *Krishna*, black, नील *Nila*, blue, पीत *Pita*, yellow, and शुक्ल *Sukla*, white, पद्म *Padma*, pink

शब्द *Sabda*, sound, स्वर *Svara* is of 7 kinds शड्ज *Sadja*, राष्य *Risabha*, गन्धार *Gandhara*, मध्यम *Madhyama*, पञ्चम *Panchama*, धैवत *Dhavata* and निषाध *Nisadha*, i. e., the Do, re, me, fa, sol, la, si.

In all there are 27 main kinds, which can be combined in innumerable combinations

Note —That in rational beings, mind also assists the senses in bringing knowledge to the soul

## SUTRA 21

श्रुतमनिन्द्रियस्य ॥ २१ ॥

**Shrutamanindriyasya.**

(The function) of the mind (is the) cognition of Scriptural knowledge.

Note.— Scriptural knowledge of a sort is possible among the souls without a mind also. (See Note under chapter 1, Sutra 30, above).

## SUTRA 22

वनस्पत्यान्तानामेकम् ॥ २२ ॥

**Vanaspatyan-tanamekam.**

(The earth-bodied, water-bodied, fire-bodied, air-bodied,) up to

the vegetable-bodied, souls (have only) one (sense i. e., touch. They know only by means of touch).

### SUTRA 23

कृमिपिपीलिकाभ्रमरमनुष्यादीनामेकैकवृद्धानि ॥ २३ ॥

**Krimipilikabhramaramanusyadinamckaikvridhani.**

*Krimi*, worms, etc., (have 2 senses touch and taste).

*Pipilika*, ants, etc., [have 3 senses : touch taste and smell).

*Bhramara*, bumble-bee, etc. (have 4 senses . touch, taste, smell and sight)

*Manushya*, man etc., (have 5 senses . touch taste, smell, sight, and hearing).

Each (class has) one (sense). more than the one preceding it.

### SUTRA 24

संज्ञिनः समनस्काः ॥ २४ ॥

**Sanjninah samanaskah.**

The rational (beings are also called)-

*Sanjnu*, (i. e., one who has got sanjna-mind here)

Elsewhere it means, name, desire, knowledge, etc.

All the celestial, human and hellish beings are rational. Some 5 sensed sub-humans are also rational, such as cow, horse, ape, pigeon serpents, etc.

### SUTRA 25

विग्रहगतौ कर्मयोगः ॥ २५ ॥

**Vigrahagataukarma-yogah.**

In *Vigrahagati* transmigration, (i. e., the passage of the soul from one incarnation to another, there is only) *Karmic* body vibration (*Karma Yoga*), by which the electric and *Karmic* molecules are attracted by the soul.

## SUTRA 26

अनुश्रेणि गतिः ॥ २६ ॥

**Anusrenigatih.**

(In *Vigraha-gati*, transmigration, or passage from one incarnation to another, the soul's) movement (is always) in a straight line.

श्रेणि *Shreni*, a straight line of spatial units from end to end) parallel with one of the 6 directions

East-West, North-South, up and down, either way.

An indivisible atom of matter (परमाणु *Parmanu*,) can go straight from the lowest limit of the Universe to its highest point i. e., a distance of 14 राज्ञ *Rajus*, in one *samaya*

## SUTRA 27

अविग्रहा जीवस्य ॥ २७ ॥

**Avigraha-jivasya.**

(The soul in its pure condition, i. e., the liberated) soul has (a straight upward) vertical movement, the movement is called अविग्रहा *avigraha*, because it is quite direct and upward, vertical and there is no turning in it) .

## SUTRA 28

विग्रहगती च संसारिणः प्राक्चतुर्भ्यः ॥ २८ ॥

**Vigrahacvatichasansarinah prakchaturbhayah.**

*Vigrahavati* or passage from one incarnation to another of a mundane soul (takes place) before 4 (*Samaya* as at the most).

A समय, *Samaya* is the time taken by an atom of matter in passing from one प्रदेश, i.e. point of space, to the next.

Why 4 *Samayas*? The soul takes one *samaya* in going in one direction. Each turning means one *Samaya* In the Universe there can not possibly be more than 3 turnings, necessary for the soul's passage. Therefore 3 *samayas* or less than 4 *samayas* are enough for the most crooked passage. In the fourth *samaya* the soul must incarnate in its new body.

## SUTRA 29.

एकसमयाविग्रहा ॥ २९ ॥

**Ekasamayavigraha.**

Where the passage is straight and there is no turning, it takes only one *samaya*.

Even an atom of matter in going from one end of the Universe to the other in a straight, upward or vertical direction, takes only one *Samaya* if it goes fastest.

## SUTRA 30.

एकं द्वौ त्रीन्मानाहारकः ॥ ३० ॥

**Ekamdvautrinvanaharakah.**

(In the) one, two or three (*Samayas* of its passage, the soul remains) अनाहारक, *Anaharaka*, non-assimilative, (that is, does not attract the molecules of *aharaka*, assimilative matter of which the external bodies, i.e., the physical, fluid and *aharaka* bodies, are formed.)

(Note that only *karmayoga* takes place, i. e., only *Karmic* electric matter is attracted See सूत्र, *Sutra 25 Supra*.)

Note also that in a straight passage of the soul, one *samaya* is taken in leaving one body and occupying the other. And in the passage, the soul continues to be *aharaka*, although in the passage itself, it is not necessary for it to attract *no-karmic* molecules, as it leaves, the molecules already attracted in its last body and will attract a fresh batch in the new body which it is going to put on in the same *samaya*.

## SUTRA 31.

सम्पूर्यन्भोपपादा जन्म ॥ ३१ ॥

**Sammurchhanagarbhopapadajanma.**

(Birth is of 3 kinds.)

सम्पूर्यन्, *Sammurchana*, spontaneous generation. It is the result of surrounding matter combining and forming the physical body for the incarnating soul.

गर्भ *Garbha*. Uterine birth. It is the forming of the physical body by the union and development of father's seed and mother's blood in the womb of the female. In the language of Embryology, by

the union between a sperm and an ovum, resulting into a fusion of the two cells into one single cell, called the 'fertilised ovum.'

उपपादः *Upapada*. Instantaneous Rise. (Instantaneous grouping together of the वैक्रियक, *Vaikriyaka*, matter to form the *Vaikriyaka* or fluid body, which is peculiar to hellish and celestial beings.)

### SUTRA 32.

सच्चित्तशीतसंयुतः सेतरा मिश्राश्चैकशस्तद्योनयः ॥ ३२ ॥

*Sachittasitasmvritah setaramisraschaikasastadyonayah.*

Living matter, cold, covered, with their opposites, and the combination of each (pair) (are) their nuclei or birth places. (योनि, *yoni*, nucleus, the material environment in which the incarnating soul finds lodgment, is of 9 kinds:—

सचित् *Sachitta*, of living matter, as the stomach, in which worms may appear.

अचित्, *Achitta*; of matter only with no life, as a wall or table in which mosquitoes may be generated.

सचिच्चित्, *Sachittachitta*, of living and dead matter, as lice in a slut's blouse or hat. The person is living but the blouse or hat is dead-matter.

शीत, *Shita*, cold. Some microbes take birth on account of cold.

उष्ण *Ushna*, Hot. Some microbes take birth on account of heat.

शीतोष्ण, *Sihtoshna*. Where life is generated by the co-existence of cold and heat.

As the heat of sun breeding gnats in a stagnant pool of water.

संयुत, *Samvrata*, Covered. As fruit may go bad and breed germs in it, if it is kept packed for a long time.

विवृत, *Vivrata*, Exposed. As moss in a piece of water.

संयुत विवृत, *Samvrata-vivrita*. Part exposed and part covered.

The hellish and celestial beings take birth in अचित्तयोनि, *achitta-yonis*.

Souls taking birth from a womb, employ a सचिच्चित्त योनि *Sachittachitta-yoni*.

सम्मुखेन, *Sammurchanas*, employ *sachitta*, *achitta*, and *sachittachittayonis*.

Hellish (नार्की) and celestial beings (देव) have hot and cold (some one and some the other) nucleus.

Fire-bodied souls (तेजसात्म्याः) have a hot one. The others have hot or cold or mixed.

Hellish, celestial and immobile beings have a covered nucleus. The विकलज, *Vykalatraya*, i. e. from 2 to 4 sensed beings have an open-covered nucleus.

The different combinations of these *yonis* yield 8400000. योग, *yonis* as follows:—

नित्यनिगोद, *Nitya nigoda*, souls which have never yet come out of a condition of common vegetables, where many souls occupy one body, as a potato :

Their <i>yonis</i> are	...	...	7,00,000
इतर निगोद, <i>Itaranigoda</i> , souls which have gone back to <i>nigod</i>	...	...	7,00,000

पृथ्वी कायिक, earth-bodied, अक्कायिक, water-bodied,			
तेज कायिक, fire-bodied; and वायु कायिक, air-bodied, all four each 7,00,000	—	—	28,00,000
वनस्पति कायिक, Vegetables, (Trees, etc.) except <i>nigoda</i> .			10,00,000

For स्थावर <i>sthavaras</i> soul	...	...	5200000
, दिश'द्विय, 2 sensed	..	..	200000
, त्रि, ,, 3 ,,	...	...	200000
, चतु, ,, 4 ,,	...	..	200000
, पच, ,, 5 ,, animals	.	...	400000
, ,, ,, 5 ,, human beings	...	...	1400000
, देश, celestial beings	...		400000
, नाशक, hellish	..	...	400000

Total ... 8400000

### SUTRA 33.

जरायुजण्डजपोतानाः गर्भ ३३५

*Jarayujandajapotanam garbhah.*

Uterine birth (as of 3 kinds.)

जरायुज, *Jarayuja*, Umbilical (Birth in a yolk, sack, flesh envelope, like a human child)

अण्डज, *Andaja*, Incubatory. (Birth from a shell like an egg.)

पोत, *Pota*, Unumbilical. (Birth without any sack or shell, like a cub of a lion or a kitten.)



## SUTRA 34

देवनारकानामुपपादः ॥३४॥

**Devanarakanamupapadah.**

*Upapada*, i.e. birth by instantaneous rise (is) peculiar to hellish and celestial beings.

## SUTRA 35

शेषाणां सम्मूर्धनम् ॥३५॥

**Sesanamsammurchhanam.**

All the rest, (i.e. except those born by embryonic birth and instantaneous rise are) सम्मूर्धनं *Sammurchhana*, born by spontaneous generation.

## SUTRA 36

औदारिकवैक्रियिकाहारकतैजसकर्मणानि शरीराणि ॥३६॥

**Audarikavaikriyikaharakataijasakarmāṇi sarīraṇi.**

The bodies are of 5 kinds —

1. औदारिक, *Audarika*, the physical (body of all men and animals)
2. वैक्रियिक, *Vaikriyika*, Fluid. (The body of hellish and celestial beings, which they can change at will.)
3. आहारक, *Aharaka*, assimilative (the spiritual man like emanation from the head of a saint in doubt, etc.)
4. तैजस, *Tajasa* Electric (body of mundane souls formed of fine molecules of electric matter called *Tajasa Vaigana*)
5. कर्मण, *Karman* Karmic (body of mundane souls, made of fine molecules of Karmic matter called *Karman Vaiganas* कर्मणोऽणवर्गाणां)

The first 3 bodies are made of *Aharaka Vaigana*, molecules of assimilative matter.

## SUTRA 37

परं परं सुक्ष्मम् ॥३७॥

**Param paramasuksmam.**

(Of these 5 bodies) each successive one (is) finer, i.e., subtler (than the one preceding it.)

**SUTRA 38**

प्रवेशतोऽसंख्येयगुणं प्राक्तैजसात् ॥३८॥

**Pradesatosamkhyeyagunam praktaijasat.**

(From the 1st to the 3rd body, i.e.) up to the Electric body (each one has) innumerable times the number of atoms (which are in the one preceding it.)

**SUTRA 39**

अनन्तगुणो परे ॥३९॥

**Anantagune pare.**

Of the last two (i. e. the electric and the *Karmic* bodies, each one compared with the body immediately preceding it has an) infinite-fold (number of atoms)

**SUTRA 40**

अप्रतीघाते ॥४०॥

**Apratighate**

(The electric and *Karmic* bodies are) unpreventible (in their passage, i.e. they can penetrate and permeate upto the end of the (Universe.)

The Fluid (वैश्विक) and *Aharak* (आहारक) assimilative bodies can also penetrate but at some places they can not. Their penetrative does not extend beyond (अस नदी) *Tiasa nadi*, the mobile channel beyond where mobile souls are not found.

**SUTRA 41**

अनादिसम्बन्धे च ॥ ४१ ॥

**Anadi Sambandhe cha.**

And their connection, (i.e. of the electric and the *karmic* bodies with the soul is) without beginning. That is, these two are always found in every soul and are absent only in liberated souls (सिद्धः) But of course, being material, they are always discarding their old constituent particles and attracting and assimilating new particles in the place of the old. From this point of view, a particular electric or *karmic* body is said to have a beginning.

## SUTRA 42

सर्वस्य ॥ ४२ ॥

Sarvasya.

(The electric and the karmic bodies are always found) with all (mundane souls).

## SUTRA 43

तदादीनि भाज्यानि युगपदेकस्याचतुर्थ्यं ॥ ४३ ॥

Tadadini bhajyani yugapadekasyachaturbhyah.

Along with these, (two i. e., the electric and the karmic bodies) in their distribution at one and the same time, with one soul (there can be utmost upto 4, (i. e., these two and one or two more bodies), i. e., a soul can never have all the 5 bodies at once. Electric and Karmic bodies it must always have. But if it has more, it can add only one or two more as follows :-

In विग्रहगति, *Vigraha-gati*, or passage from one incarnation to another, the soul has only 2 bodies, the तेजस, electric and the कामं, Karmic.

In human and sub-human condition of existence, the soul has 3, i. e., the electric, the Karmic and the physical bodies

But the saints sometimes have these 3 and the आहारक *Ahara-aka*, assimilative body also, i. e., 4 bodies at one and the same time. This is the highest limit

The hellish and celestial being also have 3 bodies; The electric, the Karmic and the fluid bodies

## SUTRA 44

निरुपभोगमन्त्यम् ॥ ४४ ॥

Nirupabhogamantyam-

The last (body, i. e., the karmic is) निरुपभोग *nirupabhoga*, i. e., can not be the means of enjoyment to the soul through the senses and the mind, as the physical body can be e. g., the karmic body bears no sound sees, no sights, etc.

Note—The तेजस electric body is like the karmic body *nirupabhoga*. There is no योग *yoga* on vibration or cause of attraction of subtle matter in it.

## SUTRA 45.

गर्भसम्पृच्छनजमाद्यम् ॥ ४५ ॥

**Garbhasammurchhanajamadyam**

The first, (i. e., the physical body is produced along with the electric and the karmic bodies, in beings who are) born in the embryonic way (गर्भे) or by spontaneous generation (सम्पृच्छन).

## SUTRA 46

औपपादिकं वैक्रियिकम् ॥ ४६ ॥

**Aupapadikam Vaikriyikam**

The fluid body (is found along with the electric and the karmic bodies in those who are) born by उपपन्न, instantaneous rise.

## SUTRA 47

लब्धिप्रत्ययं च ॥ ४७ ॥

**Labahipratyayan cha**

And (fluid body can also be attained by other) cause i. e. by a लब्धि, *labdhi*, attainment due to special austerities.

But this is, of course, in exceptional circumstances

## SUTRA 48

तैजसमपि ॥ ४८ ॥

**Taijasamapi**

Even the electric (body can be product of special austerities.)

This takes place in two ways:—

(1) शुभ तैजस, *Subha taijasa*. Beneficent electric body, e.g., a saint with supernatural powers sees famine or plague, etc., in a country and is moved to compassion. His austerities enable his electric body to overflow itself, and issuing out of his right shoulder go and to remove the causes of famine, plague, etc., and then come back and be re-absorbed in the same way in which it went out.

(2) अशुभ तैजस, *Asubha taijasa*. Maleficent electric body, e. g., the same saint being moved to anger, the duplicate body will go forth

from the left shoulder and having consumed the object of anger, will return to go into the saint and consume him also.

### SUTRA 49

शुभं विशुद्धमव्याधाति चाहारकं प्रमत्तसंयततत्तस्यैव ॥ ४९ ॥

**Subham visuddhamavyaghati chaharakampramattasamyata  
syaiva**

And the *Aharaka* body (is) beneficent pure and impreventible and found only in a *pramatta samyata* saint, (i. e., one in the 6th stage of spiritual development with imperfect now.)

It is (1) शुभ, *Subha*, (always) beneficent

(2) विशुद्ध, *Vishuddha*, pure, (the production of meritorious karmas,) and,

(3) अव्याधाति, *Avyaghati*, unpreventible (by anything in its course,)

The *आहारक शरीर*, *Aharaka* body is the spiritual man like emanation that flames forth from the head of a saint when he wants to remove his doubt on some momentous and urgent point; the flaming from flashes across space, touches or sees the feet of some omniscient Lord (*kevalin*) or a saint with perfect scriptural knowledge (*श्रुतकेवली shruta kevalin*, like भद्रबाहु *Bhadrabahu*, the preceptor of चन्द्रगुप्त, *Chandragupta Maurya*) and thus having removed the doubt re-enters the saint's head.

All this is done, of course with lightning rapidity, but it never takes more than one *antarmuhurata*, i. e., 48 minutes, minus one instant.

### SUTARA 50

नारकसम्मूर्च्छिनो नपुंसकानि ॥ ५० ॥

**Narakasammurchhino napumsakani.**

The hellish beings (and those who are) सम्मूर्च्छन, *sammurchhana*) spontaneously generated (are of) a common or neuter sex.

### SUTRA 51

न देवाः ॥ ५१ ॥

**Na devah.**

The celestial beings never (have a common sex. They are always masculine or feminine.)

## SUTRA 52

शेषास्त्रिवेदाः ॥ ५२ ॥

## Shasastrivedah

The remaining (beings, i. e., those born of an embryo, have) 3 sexes, (i. e., they can be masculine, feminine or common).

लिंग, *linga* or sex is of 2 kinds.

द्रव्यलिंग, *Daravya linga*, objective sex, differentiating organs of the sexes,

भावलिंग *Bhava Linga*, subjective sex, thought activity relating to sexual inclinations

## SUTRA 53

अपपादिक चरमोत्तमदेहाऽसंख्येयवर्षायुषोऽनपवर्त्यायुषः ॥ ५३ ॥

**Aupapadika charamottamadehasamkhyeyavarsayusoana  
pavartyayusah,**

(Those who are) born by instantaneous rise, (i. e., hellish नरका, and celestial beings देवा, (those who are in their) last (incarnation चरम देह *charama body*) with the highest (kind of) physical body, (and those whose) age is innumerable years, (e. g., human and sub-human beings in भोगभूमि, *bhoga bhum*: enjoyment land i. e., in a condition of life where there is all enjoyment and no labour like agriculture, etc. (these three live the full span of) their life (It can) never (be) cut short (by themselves or others).

The remaining beings, i. e., human and sub-human beings in कर्म, भूमि, *Karm bhum*. work-land, i. e., the condition of life where agriculture, etc are necessary for sustenance, can have their lives cut short, by external causes, as accident, suicide, disease, etc. etc.



# तीसरा अध्याय

## CHAPTER III

### SUTRA 1

रत्नशर्कराबालुकापङ्कमतमोमहातमः प्रभाभूमयोवताद्वया ऽऽका ७ प्रतिष्ठा.

सप्ताधो ऽ धः ॥ १ ॥

**RatnasarkaravalukaPankadhumatamomahatamah prabhah  
umayoghanambuvatakasha pratisthah saptadhoadhah.**

[NoTE.—To understand this chapter it is necessary to consider maps I and II of Loka (लोक) and the 2½ Dvīpas (द्वीप) with their explanations ]

There are 7 earths, lying parallel to each other and with an intervening space separating one from the other Beginning from the earth which we inhabit, these earths are situated, each one lower than the other. (Each one is surrounded and) supported by (3 atmospheres) of.

घनवान *Ghana vata*, gross air atmosphere,

अम्बुवाल *Ambuvata*, vapour atmosphere,

तनुवान, *Tanvata*, thin air atmosphere ,

(and is enveloped by) space (These) 7 earths (are)

1. रत्नप्रभा *Ratna prabha*, in hue like jewels (16 varieties of which are found in it as diamond, ruby, etc etc)
2. शर्कराप्रभा *Sharkara prabha*, in hue like sugar.
3. बालुकाप्रभा *valuka prabha*, in hue like sand
4. पङ्कप्रभा *panka prabha*, in hue like mire
5. धूमप्रभा *Dhuma prabha* in hue like smoke
6. तमःप्रभा *Tamah prabha*, in hue like darkness.
7. महातमःप्रभा *Mahatamah prabha*, in hue like pitch darkness

The वातवलय, *vata valayas*, or atmospheres are each 20,000 योजन, *yojanas* thick at the bottom of the Universe

Each one of these earths is separated from the next by an interval of one *raju*.

In each of these intervals there are the 3 atmospheres also supporting the upper earth.

Ratna Prabha is 1,80,000 *yojanas* thick. It has 3 parts. The uppermost, *khara bhaga* is 16,000 *yojanas* thick. The 16 kinds of jewels, diamonds, etc., are found in it. In the middle 14,000 *yojanas* of these 16,000, there live all the 10 kinds of Residential (*Bhavanavasi*) celestial beings except the *Asura Kumara*, and all the 8 kinds of

Peripatetic (Vyantara), celestial beings the Raksasa.

The middle part is Panka bhaga, 84,000 yojanas thick. The Asura and Raksasa live here. The lowest part is Abbahula bhaga, 80,000 yojanas thick. The first hell is situated here, i. e. only in the mobile channel (Trasa nadi) of this part.

Sharkara Prabha is 32,000 yojanas thick. The second hell is situated in the mobile channel in this.

Valuka Prabha has 28,000 yojanas and the third hell.

Panka Prabha has 24,000 yojanas and the fourth hell.

Dhuma Prabha has 20,000 yojanas the fifth hell.

Tamah Prabha has 16,000 yojanas and the sixth hell.

Maha Tamah Prabha has 8,000 yojanas and the seventh hell.

## SUTRA 2

तामु त्रिंशत्पंचविंशतिपञ्चदशदशत्रिपञ्चो नै कनरकशनसहस्राणिपञ्चैव-  
यथाक्रमम् ॥ २ ॥

**Tasu trinshatpachavinshatipanchadashatripanchonai  
kanarakashatasahasranipanchachaivayathakramam.**

In these (earths there are the following) hells respectively:

30	lacs	(in the 1st),
25	"	(,, " 2nd ),
15	"	(,, " 3rd )
10	"	(,, " 4th ),
3	"	(,, " 5th ),
99,995	(,,	" 6th )
5 lacs	(,,	" 7th ),

---

Total 84 lacs

The hellish beings are born and live in these hells. These hells are really huge holes in which the hellish beings live. They are in different layers (Patala). The 1st to the 7th earths have 13, 11, 9, 7, 5, 3, and 1 layer for each of the 1st to the 7th hell respectively, i. e. 49 layers in all.

In each layer there is a central hole (Indraka bila), and lines (Sreni badbha) of holes in the 4 cardinal and 4 intermediate directions.

In the first layer, there are 49 in each of the cardinal directions; and 48 in each of the intermediate corners.

In the second layer, the numbers are 48 and 47; in the third, 47



and 46, till in the 49th layer, the number of holes is 1 and 0. Thus in the last or 49th layer there is a central hole and 4 holes in the East, West, North and South, 5 holes in all.

The rest of the holes in the 1st 6 hells are called sporadic (Prakṛnaka). Thus there are,

49	Central (Indraka).
9604	in the 8 directions (Srenī baddha)
8390347	Sporadic (Prakṛnaka)
<hr/>	
84,00,000	

### SUTRA 3

नारका नित्याशुभतरलेस्यापरिणामदेहवेदनाविक्रिया : ॥ ३ ॥

**Naraka nitya shubhatara lesya parinama deha vedana vikriyah.**

Hellish beings always (have) very bad thought-colours, sense perceptions and their objects, bodies, feelings of pain and transformations.

Hellish beings always have the colour (लेस्या, *lessya*, the paint of body and thought, i. e. द्रव्यलेस्या *dravya lessya* and भावलेस्या *bhava lessya*) of the 3 lower lessyas, viz कृष्ण black, नील indigo and कापोत grey

Grey (कापोत, *kapota*) only in hells of 1st and 2nd earths, grey (कापोत) and indigo (नील, *nila*) in the 3rd, indigo only in the 4th, indigo and black (कृष्ण *krishna*) in the 5th, and (कृष्ण *krishna*) black in the 6th, and thus the 7th द्रव्यलेस्य, *dravya lessya* or body paint persists throughout life, but *bhava lessya* changes with the character of thought-activity. One special *bhava lessya* or thought-colour does not last for more than one मुहूर्त, *muhurta*, i. e. 48 minutes. Hellish beings also always have the lowest kinds of sense perceptions, i. e. the sound is harsh, touch is rough and hard, etc. Their environment, including themselves, is horrible.

Their bodies are also grotesque, e. g. दुण्डक, *hundaka*, disproportionate, as a small head with a huge trunk and long feet, etc. The height of the body in the first hell is 7 bows, 3 cubits and 6 fingers.

It doubles at each next hell, till in the 7th hell it is 500 bows, as 24 fingers = 1 cubit, and 4 cubits = 1 bow.

The pangs which they suffer are very acute and intense. They change their bodies at will, but the transformation is always of a low

and cruel character, such as that of a wolf, raven, etc., etc.

All the hells in the 1st, 2nd, 3rd, and 4th hells and the upper 2 lacs in the 5th hell are all hot All the rest are cold.

#### SUTRA 4

परस्परोदीरितदुःखा ॥ ४ ॥

**Parasparo dirita duhkah**

The tortures (of hellish beings are) produced (by them for) another.

#### SUTRA 5

सकलष्ठाऽसुरोदीरितदुःखाश्च प्राक् चतुर्थ्याः ॥ ५ ॥

**Samklista suro dirita duhkhascha Prak chaturthyah.**

Before the 4th (earth : e in the 1st, 2nd and 3rd earths, in the hells,) the evil-minded (celestial beings called ) Asura kumaras also give torture (to the hellish beings or incite them to torture one another)

#### SUTRA 6

तेष्वेकत्रिंशत्पद्मदशमष्टदशद्वाविंशतित्रयस्त्रिंशत्सागरोपमा सत्त्वानां परा  
स्थितिः ॥ ६ ॥

**Tesveka trisaptadasha sapta dasha dvavinsati trayastrin-  
shat sagaropama satvanam para sthitih.**

In these (seven hells) the maximum age of (hellish) beings (of different earths as follows

- |    |          |           |            |        |                           |
|----|----------|-----------|------------|--------|---------------------------|
| 1  | सागरोपमा | Sagropama | or सागर    | sagara | (simply) in the 1st earth |
| 3  | "        | "         | or sagars  | "      | " 2nd "                   |
| 7  | "        | "         | "          | "      | " 3rd "                   |
| 10 | "        | "         | "          | "      | " 4th "                   |
| 17 | सागरोपमा | Sagropama | or sagaras |        | in the 5th earth.         |
| 22 | "        | "         | "          | "      | " 6th "                   |
| 33 | "        | "         | "          | "      | " 7th "                   |

1 सागर Sagara = 10 × (crore×crore) of अद्धारपल्या addhapalya.

1 अद्धारपल्या, Addhapalya = A circular pit with a diameter of 1 योजन yojana, i e., 2000 kosas and of an equal depth if filled with

the ends of the downy-hair of a lamb of 7 days, born in the highest bhoga bhumi उत्कृष्टभोगभूमि One end of hair is taken out in every 100 years, The time taken to empty the pit is a व्याहारपल्य, *vyāāahara palya* Innumerable *vyā-vahara palyas* make one उद्धारपल्य *Uddhara palya*

Innumerable *uddhara palyas* make one अद्धापल्य, *Addha palya*

### SUTRA 7

जम्बूद्वीपलवणोदादयः शुभनामानो द्वीपसमुद्राः ॥ ७ ॥

**Jambu-dvipa lavano dadayah shubhana-mano dvipa samudrah.**

Jambudvipa Continent, Lavana samudra (ocean). etc , (etc , are) the continents and oceans being pleasant names

In the middle world (मध्यलोक *madhya loka*) there are innumerable *dvipas* (द्वीपाः) continents and *samudras* (समुद्राः) oceans

They all have pleasant (or auspicious) names. Their names are

- 1 जम्बूद्वीप, *Jambu dvipa*, in which we live,  
लवणसमुद्र, *Lavana samudra*, salt ocean
- 2 धातकालखण्डद्वीप, *Dhataki khanda dvipa*, then  
कालोदधि समुद्र, *Kalodadhi samudra*, then
- 3 पुष्करवर द्वीप, *Puskaravara dvipa*, then,  
पुष्करवर समुद्र, *Puskaravara samudra*, then-
- 4 वारुणिवरद्वीप, *Varunivara dvipa*;  
वारुणिवरसमुद्र, *Varunavara dvipa*,
- 5 क्षीरवरद्वीप, *ksiravara dvipa*,  
क्षीरवर समुद्र, *ksiravara samudra*,
- 6 घृतवरद्वीप, *Ghritavara dvipa*;  
घृतवरसमुद्र, *Ghritavara samudra*,
- 7 इक्षुवरद्वीप, *Iksuvara dvipa*;  
इक्षुवरसमुद्र, *Iksuvara samudra*,
- 8 नन्दीश्वरद्वीप, *Nandishvara dvipa*,  
नन्दीश्वर समुद्र, *Nandishvara samundra*,
- 9 अरुणवरद्वीप, *Arunavara dvipa*;  
अरुणवरसमुद्र, *Arunavara samudra*;

The last ones are:

स्वयम्भूरमण्डीप, *Swayambhu ramana dvipa*.

स्वयम्भूरमण्डीपसमुद्र, *Swayambhu ramana samudra*.

### SUTRA 8

द्विद्विविष्कम्भाः पूर्वपूर्वपरिक्षेपिणो बलयाकृतयः ॥ ८ ॥

**Dvirdvir viskambhah purvapurva pariksepino valaya kritayah.**

(The oceans and continents each one have) twice the breadth (of the one immediately preceding it. Thus जम्बूद्वीप, Jambu dvipa is 1 lac योजन, *Yojanas* in breadth, the लवणसमुद्र, *Lavana samudra* is 2 lacs, the धातुर्काश्लयद्वीप, *Dhatuki bhand dvipa* is 4 lacs and so on) Each one surrounds the one immediately preceding it. (They are all) anicular in form.

### SUTRA 9

तन्मध्येमेरुनाभिवृत्तो योजनशतसहस्रविष्कम्भो जम्बूद्वीपः ॥ ९ ॥

**Tanmadhyemerunabhivritttoyojanshatasahasraviskambho jambudvipah.**

In [the middle of these (concentric oceans and continents, is Jambudvipa which is) round (like the disc of the sun). In the centre of Jambu dvipa) like the navel (in the human body, is situated) mount meru (Jambu dvipa is) 1 lac yojanas in breadth.

1 योजन (big) yojana=2,000 kasas.

1 योजन (small) yojana=4 kosas.

Here the reference is to the big yojanas, 1 yojana = 2,000 kasas, 500 times the small one.

### SUTRA 10

भरतहैमवतहरिविदेहरम्यकहैरण्यवतेरावतवर्षाःक्षेत्राणि ॥ १० ॥

**Bharatahaimavataharivideharamyakahairanya-vatairavarsahksettrani.**

The divisions, Ksettras, (of Jambu dvipa are seven) भरत *Bharata*, हैमवत, *Haimavata*, हरि, *Hari*, विदेह, *Videha*, रम्यक, *Ramyaka*, हैरण्यवत, *Hairanyavata* and ऐरावत, *Airavata*.

## SUTRA 11.

तद्विभाजनः पूर्वापरायता हिमवन्महाहिमवन्निषिधनीलरुक्मिशिखरिणो वर्षधर-  
पर्वताः ॥ ११ ॥

**Tadvibhajinahpurvaparayata himavanmahahimavan-  
nisidhanilarukmishikharino varsadharaparvatah.**

Dividing these (7 क्षेत्र Ksettras there are 6) mountains. (They are :) हिमवन् *Himavan*, महाहिमवन् *Maha-himavan*, निषिध *Nisidha*, नील *Nila*, रुक्मि *Rukmi*, and शिखरी *Shikharī* (These mountains) run East to West.

## SUTRA 12

हेमाजुं नतपनीयवैदूर्यरजतहैममयाः ॥ १२ ॥

**Hemarjjunatapaniyaviduryarajatahemamayah.**

(The 1st mountain, i.e., हिमवन् *Himavan*, is) golden in colour ; (the 2nd silvery white), (the 3rd red, like red-hot gold; (the 4th is) blue (like the neck of a peacock) (the 5th) silvery (white), (and the 6th) golden मया (*maya*) in this sūtra means like.

## SUTRA 13

मणिविचित्रपार्ष्वा उपरिमूले च तुल्यविस्ताराः ॥ १३ ॥

**Manivichitraparshva upari mule cha tulyavistarāh.**

The sides (of these 6 mountains are) studded with various jewels, (and they are of) equal width at the foot, the top and (the middle)

## SUTRA 14

पद्ममहापद्मतिगिच्छकेसरिमहापुण्डरीकपुरण्डरीका ह्रदास्तेषामुपरि ॥ १४ ॥

**Padmamahapadmatiginchhakesharimahapundrikapun-  
drikahradastesamupari.**

On the top of these (mountains there are the following 6) lakes, (respectively :) पद्म *Padma*, महापद्म *Mahapadma*, तिगिच्छ *Tiginchha*, केसरी *Keshari*, महापुण्डरीक *Mahapundrika*, and पुण्डरीक *Pundrika*.

## SUTRA 15

प्रथमो योजनसहस्रायामस्तदर्द्धविष्कम्भो ह्रदः ॥ १५ ॥

**Prathamō yojanasahasrayamastadarddhaviskambo hradah**

The first lake (has a) length (of) 1000 yojanas (and a) breadth (of) half of that, (i.e., 500 yojanas).

**SUTRA 16**

दशयोजनावगाहः ॥ १६ ॥

**Dashayojanavagah.**

(The first lake has a) depth (of) 10 yojanas.

**SUTRA 17**

तन्मध्ये योजन पुष्कर ॥ १७ ॥

**Tanmadhyeyojanampuskaram.**

In the centre of this (first lake there is a) lotus like (island), one yojana (broad).

**SUTRA 18**

तद्विगुणद्विगुणा ह्रदा पुष्कराणि च ॥ १८ ॥

**Taddvigunadvigunahradahpuskaranicha.**

(Each of the three) lakes (up to तिग्गुण Tiginchha) (is) twice (in length, breadth and depth of the lake), and (each of the 3) islands (also of) twice (the breadth of the island in the lake immediately preceding it).

**SUTRA 19**

तन्निवासिन्यो देव्य श्रीह्रीधृतिर्कीर्तिबुद्धिलक्ष्म्यः पल्योपमस्थितयः ससामानिक-  
परिषत्काः ॥ १९ ॥

**Tannivasinyo devya hshrihridhrtikirtibuddhilaksm-  
yah palyopamasthitayah sasamanikaparisatkah.**

The goddesses residing in those (5 islands are, respectively .) श्री Shri, ह्रीं, Hri, धृति Dhrti, कीर्ति Kirti, बुद्धि, Buddhi and लक्ष्मी, Laksmi. (each one of the goddesses has a) life span of one अक्ष (Addha) पल्य, palya. (These goddesses live) with (celestial beings of an equal status with them, called) सामानिक Samanika, (and with celestial beings who are members of their courts, called) परिषद् Parishad.

**SUTRA 20**

गंगासिन्धुरोहिद्रोहितास्याहरिद्धरिकान्तासीतासीतोदानासीनरकान्तासुवर्णरू-  
प्यकुलारकारकतोदाः सरितस्तन्मध्यगाः ॥ २० ॥

**Ganga sindhu rohidro hitasya hariddharikanta sita**

**sitoda nari narakanta suvarna rupyakula rakta rakto-  
dah saritas tan madhyagah.**

The rivers गंगा, the Ganga, सिन्धु, the Sindhu, रोहिता, the Rohit, रोहित-  
स्या, the Rohitasya, हरित, the Harit, हरिकान्ता, the Harikanta, सीता, the Sita,  
सीतोदा, the Sitoda, नारी, the Nari, नरकान्ता, the Narakanta, सुवर्णकूला, the  
Suvaranakula, रूप्यकूला, the Rupyakula, रक्ता, the Rakta, रक्तोदा, the Rakto-  
da, the Raktoda, flow in those (seven ksetras, 2 in each respectively,  
i. e., Ganga, and Sindhu in Bhārta, Rohit and Rohitasya in Haimvata,  
etc., etc.)

### SUTRA 21

द्वयोर्द्वयोः पूर्वाः पूर्वगाः ॥ २१ ॥

**Dvayordvayoh purvah purvagah.**

(These 14 rivers must be taken in groups) of 2 each. The first  
(of each group as named above,) flows eastwards (and falls into the  
ocean there).

### SUTRA 22

शेषास्तवपरगाः ॥ २२ ॥

**Shesastva paragah.**

But the others flow westwards (and fall into the ocean there.)  
These rivers have their sources as follows

Ganga, Sindhu and Rohitasya,	spring from the lake Padma.
Rohita and Harikanta	" " Maha Padma
Harit and Sitoda	" " Tiginchha.
Sita and Narakanta	" " Keshari.
Nari and Rupyakula	" " Mahapundarika.
Suvarnakula, Rakta and Raktoda spring	" " Pundarika.

### SUTRA 23

चतुर्दशानदीसहस्रपरिवृता गंगासिन्धवादयो नद्याः ॥ २३ ॥

**Chaturdashanadi sahasra parivṛta ganga sindhvadayo  
nadyah.**

Ganga and Sindhu have 14,000 tributary rivers each, and others,  
i.e., the next pair (Rohit and Rohitasya) have twice, i.e., 28,000 each.  
Harit and Harikanta have 56,000 each, Sita and Sitoda have 1,12,000

each. Nari and Narkanta have 56,000 , Suvarnakula, Rupyakula 28,000 and Rakta, Raktoda 14,000 each.

### SUTRA 24

भरतः षड्विंशतिपञ्चयोजनशतविस्तरः षट्चैकोनविंशति भागा योजनस्य ॥२४॥

**Bharatah sad vinsati pancha yojana shata vistarah sat chaikona vinshati bhaga yojanasya.**

Bharat ksetra, in its widest part, measure 526½ yojanas.

### SUTRA 25

तद्विगुणद्विगुणविस्तारा वर्षधरवर्षा विदेहान्ताः ॥ २५ ॥

**Tadviguna dviguna vistara varsadhara varsa videhantah.**

Each mountain and ksetra in breadth has double the breadth of the mountain or ksetra preceding it. (This is upto) Videha.

Thus Bharata ksetra is 526½ yojanas in breadth, the Himavana mountain is double of this, i.e., 1052½ yojanas , and so on.

### SUTRA 26

उत्तरा दक्षिणतुल्याः ॥ २६ ॥

**Uttara daksina tulyah.**

To the north (of videha, the arrangement and extent of ksetras, mountains, rivers, lakes, islands is exactly) corresponding to (those in) the south (of it )

### SUTRA 27

भरतेरावतयोर्वृद्धिरासौ षट्समयाम्यामुत्सर्पिण्यवसर्पिणीभ्याम् ॥ २७ ॥

**Bharatairavatayorvrdhhirasau satsamayabhaya-mut-sarpinyavasarpinibhyam.**

In Bharata and Airavata ksetras (in the extreme south and north of Jambudvipa there is) increase and decrease of (bliss, age, height, etc. of their inhabitants in the 2 aeons), utsarpini (उत्सर्पिणी) and Avasarpini (अवसर्पिणी) (the aeons of increase and decrease respectively). There are 6 ages (in each aeon).



The ages in avasarpini, the present aeon are सुखमासुखमा, *Sukhama-sukhama*, सुखमा, *Sukhama*, सुखमादुःखमा, *Sukhama-Dukkhama*, दुःखमासुखमा, *Dukhama-sukhama*, दुःखमा, *Dukkhama*, and दुःखमादुःखमा, *Dukhama-dukkhama*. We are now in the Dukhama or the 5th age (वैवमकाल), this began in about 513 B.C., i. e., 3 years, 8½ months after the liberation of Lord Mahavira, and its total duration is 21,000 years. The sequence of ages in the utsarpini is the reversing of the order of the Avasarpini and therefore the last 3 of the Utsarpini are ages of भोगभूमि, *Bhoga-bhumi*, the rest are of कर्मभूमि, *Karma-bhumi*,

Each aeons is of  $10 \times (1 \text{ crore} \times 1 \text{ crore})$  सागर *sagaras*.

In Avasarpini, the ages have their duration as follows

1st =  $4 \times (1 \text{ crore} \times 1 \text{ crore})$  sagras.

2nd = 3                    "                    "

3rd = 2                    "                    "

4th = 1                    "                    "                    minus 42,000 years

5th = 21,000 years.

6th = 21,000 years.

Altogether  $10 \times (1 \text{ crore} \times 1 \text{ crore})$  sagaras, i. e. दशकोट्यधिका सागर,

### SUTRA 28

ताभ्यमपरा भूमयोऽवस्थिताः ॥ २८ ॥

**Tabhyamapra bhumayo avasthita.**

Excepting these two (Bharata and Airavata), the other (five) Earths are constant (There is no increase or decrease in bliss, age, height etc. there)

### SUTRA 29

एकद्वित्रिपल्योपमस्थितयो हैमवतकहारिवर्षकदेवकुरवका ॥ २९ ॥

**Ek dvitripalyopamasthitayo haimvatakaharivarsak daivakurvakah.**

(The men and animals) of Himvana, Harivarsak, Devakurnu, (bhoga-bhumi) are respectively of the one, two and three palyas.

### SUTRA 30

तथोत्तराः ॥ ३० ॥

**Tathottarah.**

(The condition of things is) the same in the north (of mount

Meru मेरु,) Devakuru, Hari and Haimavata are replaced by Uttarakuru, Ramyaka and Hairanyavata.

### SVTRA 31

विदेहेषु संख्येयकालाः ॥ ३१ ॥

**Videhesu samkhyeya kalah.**

In videha (men have an age of) numerable (संख्येय) years, i. e., the highest is 1 crore पूर्व, *purvas* and the least is अन्तर्मुहूर्तं, *antara-muhurta*.

84 lac years=1 purvanga (पूर्वांग).

84 lac years 2=1 purva=7056000000000.

1 crore purva=7056000000000,000000 years.

### SUTRA 32

भारतस्य विष्कम्भो जम्बूद्वीपस्य नवविंशतभागः ॥ ३२ ॥

**Bharatasya viskambho jambudvipasya navatishatabhagah.**

The breadth of Bharata Ksetra (is) 190 th part of the breadth of

Jambu dvipa ( $=\frac{100000}{190}=526\frac{6}{19}$ yojanas)

### SUTRA 33

द्विधातकीखण्डे ॥ ३३ ॥

**Dvir dhatakikhande.**

In the Dhatakikhande (which is the next region after salt ocean, लवणसमुद्र, the number of ksetras, mountains, rivers, lakes, etc. is) double (of that in जम्बूद्वीप, *Jambu dvipa*).

### SUTRA 34

पुष्करार्द्धे च ॥ ३४ ॥

**Puskararddhe cha.**

In (the nearest) half of Puskaradvipa also (the number of ksetras, etc. is double of that in Jambudvipa).

### SURTA 35

प्राग्मानुषोत्तरान्मनुष्याः ॥ ३५ ॥

**Pranmanusottaranmanusyah.**

On this side of Manusottara (alone) there are men.

In the middle of Puskaravara dvipa (पुष्करवर्दीप) running all round it, is Manusottara (मनुषोत्तर) mountain. It is so called because man is neither found nor born except on this side of it.

### SUTRA 36

आर्या म्लेच्छाश्च ॥ ३६ ॥

**Arya mlechchhascha.**

(The human beings in these 2½ regions, ऋद्वर्दीप, are of two kinds):  
आर्य, *Arya* and म्लेच्छ, *Mlechchha*, (i. e. respectively those who care and do not care for religion). Human beings are of 2 kinds :

आर्य, *Arya*, noble, worthy, respectable.

म्लेच्छ, *Mlechchha*, barbarian, non-Aryan, low, savage. *Arya* are of 2 kinds :

ऋद्धिप्राप्त, *Riddhi Prapta*, with supernatural powers.

अऋद्धिप्राप्त, *Anriddhi prapta*, without supernatural powers.

ऋद्धि, *Riddhi* is of 7 kinds

1. बुद्धि, *Buddhi*, Enlightenment
2. विक्रिया, *Vikriya*, Capacity to change the body at will
3. तप, *Tapa*, Austerities
4. बल, *Bala*, Miraculous strength
5. औषध, *Ausadha*, Healing power.
6. रस, *Rasa*, Capacity of an evil eye and its opposite, etc
7. अक्षीण, *Aksina*, Capacity of making stores, place, etc., in exhaustible.

There are 64 sub-classes of these 7.

अनऋद्धि, आर्य, *Anriddhi Aryas* are of 5 kinds .

1. क्षेत्र, *Ksetra*, born in Aryakhanda, one of the 6 divisions of Bharataksetra.
2. जाति, *Jati*, born in high families like Ikshvaku, Suryavansa, Nativansa, etc., etc
3. कर्म, *Karma* *Arya* by pursuit of, military, Literary, Agriculture, Trade, Arts, Service,
4. चरित्र, *Charitra*, *Arya* by right conduct
5. दर्शन, *Darshana*, *Arya* by right belief.

म्लेच्छाः, *Mlechchhas* are of 2 kinds .

1. कर्मभूमिज, *Karma bhumija*, i. e, born in the 5 *Mlechchha* divi-

sions each of the 5 Bharataksetra, and 5 Airavata, and 800 in the Videhas. The total divisions are  $5 \times 5 + 5 \times 5 + 800 = 850$ .

1. अन्तरद्वीप, *Antara-dvipaja*, i. e. inter-continental Mlechchhas.

There are 24 islands in लवणोदधि, *Lavanodadhi*, the first ocean round the first continent, Jambu-dvipa.

These islands are peopled by grotesque creatures, with boars, elephants, horses, and head on a human body, or with long ears, one leg, and similar grotesque formations of the body. Their age is one palya पल्य, and they live on fruits, etc. of trees.

500 yojanas from the circumference of Jambu-dvipa, these 24 islands are situated in a circle in the लवणसमुद्र, *Lavana Samudra*. The islands in the 4 cardinal directions are 100 yojanas in breadth, The 4 corner ones are 55 yojanas, and the remaining 16 are 50 yojanas in breadth. These 16 are 550 (instead of 500) yojanas from the circumference of Jambu-dvipa.

### SUTRA 37

भरतैरावत विदेहाः कर्मभूमयोऽन्यत्र देवकुरुतरकुसुम्यः ॥ ३७ ॥

**Bharatairavata videhah karmabhumayo anyatra devakuru-  
ruttara kurubhyah.**

Bharata, Airavata and Videha ksetras, except Deva Uttara-kurus (are the only regions where we find) Karma-bhumi, (i.e. agriculture, etc., for sustenance). This is also the region of piety and place from where liberation can be attained.

### SUTRA 38

नृस्थिती परावरे त्रिपल्योपमान्तमुहूर्ते ॥ ३८ ॥

**Nristhiti paravare tripalyopamantar muhurte.**

The age of human beings (ranges from) a maximum of 3 Palyas to a minimum of one Antara-muhurta.

Infinite  $\times$  infinite atoms = 1 *Utsanjanasanjna* (उत्संज्ञासंज्ञा)

8 *Utsanjanasanjna* = 1 *Sanjanasanjna* (संज्ञासंज्ञा).

8 *Sanjanasanjna* = 1 *Trtirrenu* (तृतिरेणु)

8 *Truti-renu* = 1 *Trasa-renu* (त्रसरेणु)

8 *Trasa-renu* = 1 *Ratha renu* (रथरेणु)

8 *Ratha-renu* = 1 hair point of a hairpin highest enjoyment-land अक्षुब्धमोगभूमि).

8 Such Hair Points	= 1 hair point middle (मध्य) enjoyment-land.
8 " "	= 1 " " lowest (न्यून) Enjoyment-land.
8 " "	= 1 hair-point enjoyment-land, action-land (कर्ममि).
8 " "	= 1 Lisa nit (yonug louse or egg of a louse).
8 Nits	= 1 Yuka louse
8 Lice	= 1 Yava madhya barley-seed (in its diameter).
8 Barley-seeds,	= 1 Utseda Angula, उत्सेदक गुल, (small finger) in its breadth.
[500 Utseda Angulas	= 1 Pramana Angula, प्रमाणांगुल, (big finger).
6 Angula	= 1 Pada (पद)
2 Pada	= 1 Vitasti (span) विस्तार
2 Vitasti	= 1 Latha (cubit) हाथ
2 Cubits	= 1 Kiku किकु
2 Kikus	= 1 Dhanusya (bow) धनुष
2,000 Bows	= 1 Kosa कोस
4 Kosas	= 1 Yojana योजन
[ ∴ A big or Pramana = 500 small yojanas = 2,000 kosas].	

By the *Pramana Angula* प्रमाणांगुल or 500 times of the ordinary measure, continent, oceans, etc are measured

जगत्प्रमाण, *Jagat shreni* = 7 *Rajus* राज्, this is the length of the Universe at its lowest point.

जगत्प्रकार *Jagat Pratara* = 7 *Rajus* × 7 *Rajus* = 49 square *Rajus*, the area of the base of the Universe.

जगत् घन(लोक), *Jagat-ghana* or *Loka* = (7 *Rajus*)<sup>3</sup> = 343 cubic *Rajus*, the volume of the Universe,

### SUTRA 39

तिर्यग्योनिजानां च ॥३९॥

**Tiryagyoni janam cha.**

The sub-human beings also (have the same range of age : )

	Maximum age	Minimum age
Earth bodied	22,000 years	one antara- muhurta
Vegetable bodied	10,000 "	
Water bodied	7,000 "	
Air bodied	3,000 "	
Fire bodied	3 days	
2 sensed	12 years	
3 "	49 days	
4 "	6 months	
5 " fish, etc.	1 crore purvas year	
Mongoose	9 purvangas "	
Serpent	42,000 years	
Birds	72,000 "	
Quadrupeds	3 Palyas	



# अध्याय चौथा

## CHAPTER IV

### SUTRA 1

देवाश्चतुर्णिकाया ॥ १ ॥

**Devashchaturni Kayah.**

Celestial beings (are of) four orders, groups or classes :

भवनवासी, *Bhavana-vasi*, Residential,

स्थितर, *Vyantara*, Peripatetic,

ज्योतिष्क, *Jyotiska*, Stellar

वैमानिक *Vaimanika*, Heavenly.

### SUTRA 2

आदितस्त्रिषु पीतान्तलेश्याः ॥ २ ॥

**Aditastrisu pitanta lesyah.**

From the first to the third (have 4) lesyas or paints up to yellow,

i.e., कृष्ण, *Black*, नील, *Indigo*, काशेत, *Grey* and पीत, *Yellow*.

### SUTRA 3

दशाष्टपञ्चद्वादशविकल्पाः कल्पोपपन्नपर्यन्ताः ॥ ३ ॥

**Dashasta pancha dvadasha vikalpah  
kalpopapanna paryantah.**

भवनवासी, Residential celestial beings are of 10 classes

स्थितर, *Peripatetic* „ „ „ 8 „

ज्योतिष्क, *Stellar* „ „ „ 5 „

कल्पवासी, *Heavenly* „ „ „ 12 „

Total „ „ 35 Classes.

(All these kinds are) born up to the Kalpa (the 16 heavens). Beyond that 16th heaven, they are all alike ; there are no classes. The Heavenly have 12 classes, because there are 12 Indras in 16 heavens.

## SUTRA 4

इन्द्रसामानिकत्रायस्त्रिंशपाररिषदात्भरक्षलोकपालानीकप्रकीर्णकामियोग्यकिल्बि-  
षिकाश्चैकशः ॥ ४ ॥

**Indra samanika trayastrimsha parisadatma raksa loka pala  
nika prakirnakabhiyogka kilbisikashchaikashah.**

Every class (has) 10 (grades) .

Indra	Powerful and of Supreme authority, like a king.
Samanika	Powerful but not authoritative like Indra , like father, teacher.

Trayastrins	Like minister or priest, so-called they are 33 in number.
-------------	--

Parisad	„ Courtiers
---------	-------------

Atma-raksta	„ Body-guards.
-------------	----------------

Loka-pala	„ The police, the protectors of the people.
-----------	---

Anika	„ The army.
-------	-------------

Prakirnaka	„ The people.
------------	---------------

Abhiyogya	„ That grade of celestial beings who form themselves into conveyances as horse, lion, swan, etc , etc., for the other grades.
-----------	---

Kilbisika	„ That servile grade.
-----------	-----------------------

## SUTRA 5

त्रायस्त्रिंशलोकपालवर्ज्या व्यन्तरज्योतिष्काः ॥ ५ ॥

**Traystrisha lokapala varjya vyantara jyotiskah.**

But the Peripatetic and Stellar celestial beings, the grades of Trayastrinsa, like Minister or Priest, and Lokapala like the police, are denied.

## SUTRA 6

पूर्वयोर्द्विन्द्राः ॥ ६ ॥

**Purvayor dvindrah.**

In the first two, (i. e Residential and Peripatetic orders, there are) two Indras (or kings in each of them 10 and 8 classes respectively).



## SUTRA 7

कायप्रवीचाराभाऐशानात् ॥ ७ ॥

**Kaya pravichara Aaishanat.**

Up to Isana (or the 2nd heaven, celestial beings which include all Residential, Peripatetic and Stellar celestial beings) have bodily sexual enjoyment (like human beings) .

## SUTRA 8

शेषाः स्पर्शरूपशब्दमनः प्रवीचाराः ॥ ८ ॥

**Shesah sparsha rupa shabda manah pravicharah.**

The others have the sexual enjoyment by means of touch, sight of beauty, sound and mind (as follows : )

In 3rd and 4th heavens by touch only

In 5, 6, 7, and 8th „ „ sight only.

In 9, 10, 11, and 12th „ „ sound only as songs, etc.

In 13, 14, 15, and 16th „ „ mind only.

## SUTRA 9

परेऽप्रवीचारा ॥ ९ ॥

**Pareapravi charah.**

The remaining (celestial beings are) without sexual desire. (There are no goddesses there. Beyond the 16th heaven there is only the male sex).

## SUTRA 10

भवनवासिनोऽसुरनागविद्युत्सुपर्णाग्निवातस्तनितोदधि द्वीपदिककुमारा ॥ १० ॥

**Bhavana vasino asurnaga vidyut suparnagni vata stanito dadhidvipa dikkumarah.**

(The 10 classes of ) Residential celestial beings (are): Asura-kumara, Naga, Vidyuta, Suparna, Agni, Vata, Stanita, Udadhi, Dvipa and Dik Kumara.

They are called Kumaras, because their lives and habits are likt of youths of under 20 who are called kumaras.

The Residentials (ऋतवासी) live as follows: In the first earth, Ratnaprabha, there are three strata, one above the other with an interval of 1000 yojanas. The first is called kharabhaga (क्षरभाग) this is the abode of 9 classes of Residentials, i. e. of all except Asura Kumaras. The Asucas reside in the 2nd stratum called panka-bhaga (पंकभाग) In the third or lowest stratum, called Abbahula-bhaga (अब्जवुलभाग), there is situated the 1st hell

### SUTRA 11

व्यन्तरा : किन्नरकिम्पुरुषमोरगगंधर्वयक्षराक्षसभूतपिशाचाः ॥ ११ ॥

**Vyantarāh kinnara kimpurusa mahoraga gandharva yaksa  
raksasa bhuta pishachah**

The (classes of) Peripatetics (are) .

- 1 Kinnara.
- 2 Kimpurusha
- 3 Mahoraga
- 4 Gandharva
- 5 Yaksha.
- 6 Rakshasa
- 7 Bhuta.
- 8 Pishacha.

Some of these live in the innumerable Oceans and Continents, i. e., all excepts the Rakshasa, live in the khara-bhaga or first uppermost stratum of the first earth Ratnaprabha. The Rakshasas live in the 2nd or panka-bhaga of the same

### SUTRA 12

ज्योतिस्का सूर्याचन्द्रमसौग्रहनक्षत्रप्रकीर्णिकनारकाश्च ॥ १२ ॥

**Jyotiskah surya chandramasau graha nakshatra prakirnika  
tarakascha.**

The classes of settlers are

- 1 Surya, the sun.
- 2 Chandrama, the moon.
- 3 Graha, the planets.
- 4 Nakshatra, the constellations.
- 5 Prakirnika taraka, scattered stars.

The stellars begin at a height of 790 yojanas (each of 2000 kosas) from the level of the earth on which we are. The lowest are the stars,

10 yojanas above them are the suns. 80 yojanas above the suns are the moons. 4 yojanas above the moons are the 27 nakshatras, 4 yojanas above the nakshatras is the Budha, the planet mercury. 3 yojanas above them, is the Shukra, the Planet Venus, 3 yojanas above them the Vṛhaspati the planet Jupiter; 3 yojanas above them is the Mangala or Angaraka, the planet Mars; 3 yojanas above them is the Sanaishchara, the planet Saturn.

Thus up to 900 yojanas from the earth-level upwards are found the stellar order of celestial beings. The yojana here is 2000 kosas.

### SUTRA 13

मेरुप्रदिक्षणानित्यगतयोन्लोके ॥१३॥

**Meru pradiksana nitya gatayo nrloke.**

In the human regions, (i.e., the 2½ dvipas, the stellars) always move round (their respective) Mount Meru, (but their nearest orbit to the Central Meru in Jambu-dvīpa has a radius of 1121 yojanas. That is, they never appear in a circle of 1121 yojana-radius, round the Central Meru.)

### SUTRA 14

सत्कृतःकालविभागः ॥ १४ ॥

**Tatkṛtaḥ kala vibhagaḥ.**

Divisions of time (are) caused by those (movements of the stellars).

### SUTRA 15

बहिरवास्थिता ॥ १५ ॥

**Bahiravasthitah**

(The stellars) outside the 2½ dvipas i.e., beyond Manusottara mountain in the middle of Puskaravara dvīpa, are fixed (They never move.)

### SUTRA 16

वैमानिकाः ॥ १६ ॥

**Vaimanikah.**

Now we go on to) the heavenly beings.

## SUTRA 17

कल्पोपपन्नाःकल्पातीताश्च ॥ १७ ॥

**Kalpopannakalpatitashcha.**

(These are of 2 kinds.)

Kalpopanna, born in the 16 heavens, and with 10 grades. These alone have 10 classes.

Kalpatita, born beyond the 16 heavens. They have no grades or classes. They are called *Ahamindra* अहमिन्द्र (lit. 'I am India'), and are all alike.

## SUTRA 18

उपर्युपरि ॥ १८ ॥

**Uparyupari.**

The 16 heavens are situated in pairs, one (pair) above the other (The *grāneyakas*, are also one above the other beyond the 16 heavens.)

## SUTRA 19

सौधर्मेशानसानत्कुमारमाहेन्द्रब्रह्मब्रह्मोत्तरलान्तवकापिष्ठशुक्रमहाशुकसता-  
रसहस्रारेष्वानतप्रताणतयोरारणाच्युतयोनवसुग्रैवेयकेषुविजयवैजयन्तजयन्तापरा-  
जितेषुसर्वार्थसिद्धौच १९ ॥

**Saudharmaishana sanatkumara mahendra brahma  
brahmotra lantava kapistha shukra maha shukra satara  
sahasraresvanata pranatayo rarana chyutayor navasu  
graiveyakesu vijaya vaijayanta jayanta parajitesu sarvar-  
tha siddhau cha.**

(They कल्पवासी live) in .

1 सौधर्मा *Saudharma*, 2 ईशान. *Isan*, 3 सान्तकुमार, *Sanat-kumara*, 4  
माहेन्द्र *Mahendra*, 5 ब्रह्मा *Brahma*, 6 ब्रह्मोत्तर *Brahmottara*, 7  
लान्तव *Lantava*, 8 कापिष्ठ *Kapistha*, 9 शुक्र *Shukra*, 10 महाशुक  
*Mahashukra*, 11 सतार *Satara*, 12 सहस्रार *Sahasrara*, 13 आनत  
*Anat*, 14 प्रणत *Pranata*, 15 आरण *Arana* and अच्युत 16 *Achyuta*.

(Above these 16 heavens, the abodes of अहमिन्द्र *Ahamindras* are :)

9 ग्रैवेयक *Graiveyaka* (heavens ,)

9 अनुदिश *Anudisha* ( „

5 अनुक्त, Anuttara (heavens, 1 e.,)

विजय, Vijaya, वैजयन्त, Vijayanta, जयन्त, Jayanta ;  
अपरमज्जित, Aparajita, सर्वार्थसिद्धि, Sarvārtha-siddhi.

Above the Sarvārtha-siddhi, is the सिद्धक्षेत्र, Siddha-kshetra, the place of Liberated souls.

The first heaven सौवर्ग Saudharama is the nearest, because its central heavenly car or abode (विमान Vimana) is only one hair's breadth from the top of the Central Meru, (सुदर्शनमेरु). This Meru is 1,00,040 yojanas high, 1,000 yojanas of it are embedded in the earth, the rest is above, the top being 40 yojanas.

The कल्पवासी Heavenly have 12 classes because there are 12 Indras in the 16 heavens as follows :

The 1, 2, 3, 4 heavens have one Indra each : e., 4 Indras					named after their heavens.
5, 6	"	"	"	"	only, i.e., 1 Brahmedra
7, 8	"	"	"	"	1 Lantava.
9, 10	"	"	"	"	1 Shukra.
11, 12	"	"	"	"	1 Satara
The 13, 14, 15, 16					4 named after their heavens.

---

Total Indras...12.

The 16 heavens have 52 layers (Patala), i.e., 31, 7, 4, 2, 1, 1 respectively for 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th, 5th, and 6th pairs of heavens, and 6 for the 7th and the 8th pairs.

There are 9 for the 9 Graiveyakas .

1 " " 9 Anudisas ,

1 " " 5 Anuttaras ,

In all there are 63 layers (Patala).

## SUTRA 20

स्थितिप्रभावसुखद्युतिलेश्याविशुद्धीन्द्रियावधिविषयतोऽधिकः ॥ २० ॥

**Sthiti prabhava sukha dyuti lesya vishuddhindriya-  
vadhī visayatoadhikah.**

Age, power, enjoyment, brilliance, purity of lesya (paint and thought colour) sense-faculties, visual knowledge—(all) these go on increasing (as we go from the lower to the higher heavens.)

## SUTRA 21

गतिशरीरपरिग्रहाभिमानतोहीनाः ॥ २१ ॥

**Gati sharira parigraha bhimanato hinah.**

Moving from place to place, height of body, attachment to world by objects, pride—these (go on) decreasing (as we go up to the higher heavens.)

e g in 1 and 2	heavens, stature is 7	hands (cubits).
3 and 4	" "	6 "
5 and 6, 7 and 8	" "	5 "
9 and 10, 11 and 12	" "	4 "
13 and 14	" "	3½ "
15 and 16	" "	3 "
In the 1, 2, 3 ग्रैवेयक, <i>grāveyaka</i>	stature is 2½	hands.
In the 4, 5, 6 "	" "	2 hands.
In the 7, 8, 9 "	" "	1½ hands.
In the 9 अनुदिश, <i>Anudisha</i>	" "	1½ hands.
In the 5 अनुसरविमान, <i>Anutra Viman</i>	" "	1 hand.

1014/88, स्व. मुन्दरी देवी के  
दिग्गज नाम  
1325, बावली चोक, देह ॥ २१ ॥  
ने की पुण्यमूर्ति  
के लोफ  
सर्व  
देह

## SUTRA 22

पीतपद्मशुक्ललेश्याद्वित्रिशेषेषु ॥ २२ ॥

**Pita padma shukla leshya dvitri shesesu.**

(There are) पीत yellow, पद्म pink, and शुक्ल white, लेश्या *lesya* (pairs, and) the remaining (heavens).

Yellow (पीत) in 1 and 2 heavens | 1. e., 2 pairs.  
Yellow-pink in 3 and 4 " |  
Pink in 5 and 6, 7 and 8, and 9 and 10.  
Pink-white in 11 and 12 heavens.  
White in the rest of the heavens and higher regions.

## SUTRA 23

प्राग्वैयकेभ्यः कल्पाः ॥ २३ ॥

**Praggrāiveyakebhyah kalpah.**

(The heavens) before (we reach). The *Graiveyakas* (are called) *kalpas*.

## SUTRA 24

ब्रह्मलोकालयालोकान्तिकाः ॥ २४ ॥

**Brahma lokalaya laukantikah.**

(Having) *Brahma-loka* (as) abode (are) *Laukantikas*. The *Lauk-*

antika heavenly beings live in the highest parts of the 5th heaven, called Brahmaloka.

These are so called because their connection with loka has come to an end, i. e., in their next incarnation they shall be born as human beings and shall attain Liberation

### SUTRA 25

सारस्वतादित्यवह्न्यरुणगर्दतोयतुषिताव्यावाचारिष्ठाश्च ॥ २५ ॥

**Sarasvataditya vahnyaruna garadatoya tusita vyabadharistascha**

(These Laukantikas are of the following 8 classes )

सारस्वत् *Saraswat*, आदित्य *Aditya*, वह्नि *Vahni*, अरुण *Aruna*, गर्दतोय *Gardatoya*, तुषिति *Tusita*, व्यावाच्य *Avyabadha*, and अरिष्ट *Arista*,

There are 16 more classes, 2 in the 8 intervals formed by the above 8 classes. In all, there are 24 classes. The names of their heavens take after them.

They are all alike and independent; and without sexual desire and therefore called देवर्षि *Devars*. They descend and attend to the Tirthankaras, when the latter make up their minds to renounce the world.

The number of Laukantika celestial being is 4,07,806.

### SUTRA 26

विजयादिषु द्विचरमाः ॥ २६ ॥

**Vijayadisu dvicharmah.**

In the (4 अनुत्तर *Anuttara* heavens, i. e.,) *Vijaya*, etc., (i. e. *Vijayanta Jayanta*, *Aparajita*, and the १ अनुदिश *Anudishas*, those heavenly beings are born, who shall attain Liberation at the most after having incarnated (as a human being) twice.

[All these are beings with right belief (मम्यदर्शन)]

### SUTRA 27

औपपादिकमनुष्येभ्यः शेषास्तिर्यग्योनयः ॥ २७ ॥

**Aupapadika manusyebhyah shesastiryagyonayah.**

Other than those born by instantaneous rise, (i. e., hellish and celestial beings) and human beings, are sub-human beings, i. e., *Triyancha* तिरेच.

Fine, one-sensed sub-humans are found everywhere in the Universe. Gross one-sensed are also in the whole Universe, but not everywhere like the fine one-sensed ones. The sub-humans from 2 to 5 sensed beings are only in the Mobile Channel (Trasa-nadi).

### SUTRA 28

स्थितिरसुरतागसु परांद्वीपशेषाणा सागरोपमत्रिपत्योपमार्द्धहीनमिता ॥२८॥

**Sthitirasura naga suparna dvipa seshanam sagropam: tripalyo-pamarddha hina mitah.**

The (maximum) age of

असुर Asura, measures	1	Sagara, सागर
नागा Naga, „	3	Palya पल्य
सुपर्ण Suparna, „ $\frac{1}{2}$ less, (i. e. $2\frac{1}{2}$ )	„	„
द्वीप Dvipa, „	2	„
and of the other (6 classes)	$1\frac{1}{2}$	„

### SUTRA 29

सौधर्मैशानयोःसागरोपमेऽधिके ॥ २९ ॥

**Saudharmai shanayoh sagaropame adhike.**

In the Saudharma and Ishana (1 e, 1st and 2nd heavens, the maximum age is) a little over 2 Sagras.

### SUTRA 30

सानत्कुमारमाहेन्द्रयोःसप्त ॥ ३० ॥

**Sanatkumara mahendrayoh sapta.**

In the Sanatkumar Mahendra, (1 e 3rd and 4th heavens, the maximum age is a little over) 7 sagaras



### SUTRA 31

त्रिसप्तनवैकादशत्रयोदशपञ्चदशभिरधिकानितु ॥ ३१ ॥

**Tri sapta navaikadasha trayodasha panchadasha bhira-dhikanitu.**

And 3, 7, 9, 11, 13, and 15 added to (7 sagaras make up the maximum age of others,



In the 5th and 6th heavens, it is a little over 10 Sagaras.

„ „ 7th „ 8th „ „ „ „ „ 14 „

„ „ 9th „ 10th „ „ „ „ „ 16 „

„ „ 11th „ 12th „ „ „ „ „ 18 „

In the 13th and 14th heavens it is 20 sagaras.

„ „ 15th „ 16th „ „ „ 22 „

### SUTRA 32

आरणाच्युतादूर्ध्वमेकैकेन नवमुग्रं वेयकेषु विजयादिषु सवर्षसिद्धौ च ॥ ३२ ॥

**Aranachyuta durddhva mekaikina navasu graiveyakesu vijayadisū sarvarthasiddhau cha.**

Above Arana and Achyuta, in the 9 Graiveyakas (it is) more and more by one sagara, (i. e., it is 23-31 sagaras respectively.) In the 9 Anudisas, (it is 32 sagaras and) in Vijaya, etc., (in the 5 Anuttaras it is 33 sagaras. But) in (the last Anuttara, i. e.,) Sarvarthasiddhi, (it is never less than 33 sagaras.)

### SUTRA 33

अपरापत्योपमधिकम् ॥ ३३ ॥

**Aparapalyopama madhikam.**

(In the Saudharma and Ishana the) minimum (age is) a little over one palya.

### SUTRA 34

परतः परतः पूर्वापूर्वानन्तरा ॥ ३४ ॥

**Paratah paratah Purvapūrvānantarah.**

Further (and) further (on), the former (or maximum age becomes the minimum age for the next. As for the rest, the maximum age for) the immediately preceding [region is the minimum for the next above it.)

### SUTRA 35

नरकाणां च द्वितीयादिषु ॥ ३५ ॥

**Narakanamcha dvitīyadisū.**

The same (rule applies to the ages) of hellish beings, (i. e., the

maximum age of the 1st is the minimum) of the 2nd and so on.

**SUTRA 36**

दशवर्गसहस्रत्राणिप्रथमायाम् ॥ ३६ ॥

**Dashavarsa sahasrani prathamayam.**

(The minimum age of beings) in the first (hell is) 10,000 years.

**SUTRA 37**

भवनेषुच ॥ ३७ ॥

**Bhavaneshucha.**

(The minimum age) of Residentials भवनवासी (is also) the same (i. e., 10,000 years.)

**SUTRA 38**

व्यन्तराणांच ॥ ३८ ॥

**Vyantarananamcha.**

The same for Peripatetics, (i. e., the minimum is 10,000 years.)

**SUTRA 39**

परापल्योपममधिकं ॥ ३९ ॥

**Para palyopama madhikam.**

The maximum (age for peripatetics is) a little over one palya.

**SUTRA 40**

ज्योतिष्काणांच ॥ ४० ॥

**Jyotiskanam cha.**

The stellars also (have a maximum of a little over one palya.

## SUTRA 41

तदष्टभागोऽपरा ॥ ४१ ॥

**Tadasta bhago apara.**

The minimum (for the stellars is)  $\frac{1}{8}$  of that, (i.e., a palya.)

## SUTRA 42

लौकान्तिकानामष्टौ सागरोपमाणि सर्वेषाम् ॥ ४२ ॥

**Laukantikanamastau sagaropamani servesam.**

(The age) of the Laukantikas (is) 8 sagaras. (It is the same) for all.



# अध्याय पांचवा

## CHAPTER V

### SUTRA 1

अजीवकाया धर्माधर्माकाशपुद्गलाः ॥ १ ॥

**Ajivakaya dharma dharmakasha pudgalah.**

The non-soul extensive (substances are :)

धर्म Dharma, medium of motion to soul and matter,

अधर्म Adharma, " " rest " " "

आकाश Akasha, space and, and

पुद्गल Pudgala, matter.

काय Kaya means extensive, i. e., having extent like the body, i. e., occupying more than one प्रदेश Pradesha, spatial unit, or point. काल Kala, times has no extent, because its innumerable points, kalanus are packed full like a heap of jewels in universal space, but are never united one with the other.

### SUTRA 2

द्रव्याणि ॥ २ ॥

**Dravyani.**

(They are also called) dravyas, substances

6 Dravyas · The basic distinction is one It is seen, it is undeniable. It is the distinction between the (the I) and the chair on which I sit. Technically it is the distinction between Jiva and Ajiva. It is perfect in Logic, and universally observable in experience

Grouped round both of these and making these two, knowable and describable are time and space. Time and space are not one. Similarly the motion or rest—which are also observable in men and matter—are not one, though there is nothing which is neither at rest, nor in motion. Each condition is a condition of rest or motion.

Thus we get Jiva, soul, Ajiva, non-soul including matter, time, space, media of motion and of rest.

Substance is a group of attributes which are never separable one from the other. It is like a lump of sugar, every atom

of which has all the attributes of sugar, sweetness, crystallisation, whiteness, etc.

There are 6 such groups.

There is no attribute outside of these 6 groups.

Every substance has an infinity of attributes in it.

The full attributes of no substance can be given.

Attributes are in all the parts and modification of a substance, i. e., of a group of attributes.

सामान्यगुण *Samanya-guna*, or common attributes are found in all substances; these are the attributes which are necessary for the existence of the group as a group.

These are infinite but 6 are principal

अस्तित्व...1. *Asitva*, Isness, Indestructibility, permanence, the capacity by which substance cannot be destroyed.

वस्तुत्व...2. *Vastutva*, Functionality, capacity by which substance has a Function.

द्रव्यत्व...3. *Dravyatva*, Changeability, capacity by which it is always changing its modifications

प्रमेयत्व...4. *Prameyatva*, Knowability, capacity of being known by some one or of being the subject-matter of knowledge

अगुलबुधत्व...5. *Aguru-laghutva*, Individuality, capacity by which one attribute or substance does not become another, and the substance does not lose its attributes whose grouping forms the substance itself

प्रदेशत्व...6. *Pradeshatva*, Spatiality, capacity of having some kind of form.

चेतनत्व...*Chetanatva* Consciousness } are common attributes of the  
अमूर्तत्व...*Amurtatva*, Immateriality } class of substance or group of  
attributes, called soul.

अचेतनत्व...*Achetanatva*, Unconsciousness } are common to space,  
अमूर्तत्व...*Amurtatva*, Immateriality } motion and rest and time

अचेतनत्व...*Achetanatva*, Unconsciousness } are common to Matter.  
मूर्तत्व...*Murtatva*, Materiality.

विशेषगुण *Vishesa guna*, or special attributes of a particular substance. These are the attributes which distinguish one group from the others.

Modifications occur only in attributes.

Substance and Attribute are distinguishable according to their name, number, differentia and function, i.e. respectively, Sanjna, Sankhya, Laksana, Prayojana } पञ्चा, संख्या, लक्षण, प्रयोजन.)

The bottom reality is attributes. But always in 6 groups.

काया, *Kaya* is that which has extent, i. e. many प्रदेशः, *Pardeshas*, i. e. occupies more than one unit of space. Kala, time, alone does not do so. Therefore is not kaya, or extensive the units of time, i. e. Kalanus, कालानु, are packed in Loka like a heap of jewels (रत्नराशि के समान).

विशेषगुण *Vishesha guna* or special attributes of each substance are :

- (1) जीव *Jiva-soul*—1. Knowledge (ज्ञान). (In its full form it arises only in the absence of knowledge-obscuring karma )
2. Conation (इच्छा) ( In its full form it arises only in the absence of Conation obscuring karma )
3. Bliss (सुख). In its full form it arises only in the absence of all the 4 destructive karma)
4. Power (शक्ति) (In its full form it arises only in the absence of obstructive karmas, etc).
5. Right Belief (सम्यग्दर्शन). { In its full
6. Right Conduct (सम्यक्चरित्र) { form it arises only in the absence of deluding karma.
7. अव्यावधान. *Avyavadha*, Undisturbable, due to the absence of *Vedaniya* (Feeling) karma, neither pleasure nor pain.
8. अवगाह, *Avagaha*, due to the absence of body karma.
9. अगुल्लघुत्व, *Agurulaghutva*, due to the absence of family-karma.
10. सूक्ष्मत्व, *Sukshmatva*, due to the absence of age.

The first 6 are अनुजीवी, *Anujivi*, attributes, which co-exist in and constitute the substance.

They arise fully only on the destruction of 4th destructive karmas, conation and knowledge obscuring ; Deluding ; and obstructive.

The last 4 are प्रतिजीवी (प्रतिजीवी), attributes, which merely indicate the absence of their opposites.

They arise fully on the destruction of the 4 अपातिवा non-destructive karmas वेदनीय, *Vedaniya*, Feeling, आयु, age, गोत्र family and नाम body karmas.

- (2) पुद्गल, *Pudgala*, matter. Special attributes are :  
 1. Touch, स्पर्श,  
 2. Taste, रस ,  
 3. Smell, गन्ध , and  
 4. Colour, वर्ण.  
 (3) धर्म, *Dharma*, medium of motion.  
 (4) अधर्म, *Adharma*, medium of Rest.  
 (5) अणुपदार्थ , *Akasha*, space, its function is to give place to others.  
 (6) काल *Kala*, Time ; it brings about modifications

### SUTRA 3

जीवाश्च ॥ ३ ॥

**Jivashcha.**

Jivas (or souls are) also (substances and extensive ones)

### SUTRA 4

नित्यावस्थितान्यरूपाणि ॥ ४ ॥

**Nitya vasthanitya rupani**

(The above 5 extensive substances are ) permanent in their nature. (and with काल *Kala*, time, are) fixed (as the sole constituents of the Universe,) (and are) devoid of touch, taste, smell and colour, (i. e. are अरूपी *Arupi*).

### SUTRA 5

रूपिणः पुद्गलाः ॥ ५ ॥

**Rupinah pudgalah.**

(But) matter (is) *Rupi*, i. e. has touch, taste, smell and colour )

[Note—In Sutras 3 and 5, the plural is used to indicate that souls are infinite and distinct, so are also particles of matter.]

### SUTRA 6

आ आकाशादेकद्रव्यणि ॥ ६ ॥

**A akasha deka dravyani.**

Up to space, (i. e. *Dharma*, *Adharma* and *Akasha* are) one substance each. (They are indivisible wholes,)

## SUTRA 7

निष्क्रियणि च ॥ ७ ॥

Niskriyani cha.

(These three are) not (capable of) moving (from place to place.)  
Time substance also is incapable of motion. It is also Niskriya.

## SUTRA 8

असंख्येयाः प्रदेशाः धर्मधर्मैकजीवानाम् ॥ ८ ॥

Asankhyeyah pradeshas dharmadharmaika jivanam.

(There are) innumerable Pradeshas of Dharma, Adharma and each soul.

(A Pradesha is the unit of space occupied by an atom of matter.)  
The number of Pradeshas in Dharma Adharma, a Soul, and Lokakasa, i. e. the Universe, (i. e. all except pure space) is the same, i. e. it is innumerable (in all).

The soul fills the whole Universe only in Omniscient overflow. Otherwise it is extent equal to its mundane body, except in the Overflow (Samudghata) See Dravya Samgraha Gatha, 10, Vol. I. S. B J 28-31.

## SUTRA 9

आकाशम्यानन्ताः ॥ ९ ॥

Akashasya-nantah

(The Pradeshas) of space (are) infinite

## SUTRA 10

संख्येयास्तस्येयाश्च पुद्गलानाम् ॥ १० ॥

Sankhyeya asankhyeyascha pudgalanam.

(The atoms) of matter (are) numerable, (संख्येया Sankhyeya), innumerable (असंख्येया Asankhyeya), and अनन्त Ananta, infinite (according to their different molecular compositions.

One atom of matter, if free, occupies a unit of space i. e. a Pradesha. Infinite atoms will imply infinite Pradeshas of matter in Lokakasa. But this only if they are all free, i. e. the whole matter of the Universe exists only in atomic form. This it does not. There-



fore there is no real contradiction between this and the 8th Sūtra, because a molecule of, e. g., 3 atoms of matter may occupy less space than is represented by 3 Pradeshas, which would be necessary for the 3 atoms in their free condition. The material atoms have the capacity of compressing an infinite number of themselves into one molecule which may not occupy more than one Pradesha.

This may be illustrated roughly. A saccharin pill compresses the sweetness of many lumps of sugar in it. In the form of the pill, those lumps occupy much less space than otherwise. As the space in a room may be occupied by the light of one lamp and also by 50 other lamps if they are brought there.

### SUTRA 11

नानोः ॥ ११ ॥

**Nanoh.**

(There are) no (unmerable Pradeshas) of an atom.

An atom occupies always one Pradesha. It follows from the definition of Pradesha.

### SUTRA 12

लोकाकाशेऽवगाहः ॥ १२ ॥

**Lokakasheavagahah.**

The place (of these substances is only) in the Lokakasa, Universe.

This division into universe and non-universe (loka and aloka) is based on Dharma and Adharma. Souls and matter move on and rest up to the confines of the Universe only.

### SUTRA 13

धर्मधर्मयोः कृत्स्ने ॥ १३ ॥

**Dharmadharmayoh kritane.**

Of Dharma and Adharma (the place is) in the whole (Universe).

### SUTRA 14

एकप्रदेशादिषु भाज्यः पुद्गलानाम् ॥ १४ ॥

**Eka pradeshadisu bhajyah pudgalanam.**

In one pradesha space (in 2 pradeshas-space, in 3 pradesha-space),

etc., (upto lokakasa. i e, the universe, only 1, 2 or 3. etc. atoms ) of matter (will find) distribution of place (if they are in a free condition, but in a molecular form any number of atoms can occupy any one of those spaces ).

### SUTRA 15

असंख्येयभागादिषु जीवानाम् ॥ १५ ॥

**Asankhyeya bhagadisū jīvanam.**

[The soul even in its lowest condition occupies innumerable pradeshas. This is not in conflict with the saying that (लोककसा) *Lokakasa* has innumerable pradeshas, because innumerable may apply to a large number and to a still larger and larger number. So if the Universe (*Lokakasa*) is divided into innumerable parts, each part also has got innumerable pradeshas.] (The place ) of souls (is) in one or more of (these) innumerable parts.

Souls have five (सूक्ष्म *sukṣma* ) or dense (बद्ध *badara* ) bodies. Fine bodies can pass through dense bodies. And the space occupied by one dense-bodied soul, gives place to an infinite number of fine-bodied souls

### SUTRA 16

प्रदेशसंज्ञा विगर्भाभ्यां प्रदीपवत् ॥ १६ ॥

**Pradesha samhara visarṇabhyam pradīpavat**

By the contraction and expansion of the pradeshas (the soul, although it always has innumerable pradeshas, occupies space) like the light from a lamp. (e, g, a soul can occupy the space represented by an ant or an elephant or even the महाच्छा *Mahamachchha* found in the स्वयम्भूरमण्डल *Svayambhūramana*, the outermost ocean of our Universe and of which the length is 1000 yojanas This is the biggest body in existence The smallest is that of a fine nigoda soul which is aparyapta, i e. incapable of full development The souls that occupy body die and reborn 18 times in the time taken by one beat of the average human pulse Thus it is like a lamp which lights a small room and also a larger one. Light vibrations expand more in the larger than in the small room)

### SUTRA 17

गतिस्थित्युपग्रहौ धर्माधर्मयोरुपकारः ॥ १७ ॥

**Gati sthityupagrahau dharmadharma yorupakarah.**

Supporting the motion and rest (of soul and matter, is ) the function of Dharma and Adharma respectively.

**SUTRA 18**

अकाशस्यावगाहः ॥ १८ ॥

**Akashasyavagahah.**

(The function ) of Space (Akasa, is to give ) place (to all the other substances ).

**SUTRA 19**

शरीरवाङ्मनः प्राणपानाः पुद्गलानाम् ॥ १९ ॥

**Sharira vanmanah pranapanah Pudgalanam.**

(The function) of matter (is to form the basis of the ) bodies, speech and mind and respiration of souls

There are 23 kinds of molecules or varganah. The 5 bodies are made of 3, and speech and mind each of one, kinds. See Jiva Kanda 606-7.

**SUTRA 20**

सुखदुःखजीवितमरणोपग्रहाश्च ॥ २० ॥

**Sukha dukha jivita maranopagrahascha.**

(The function of matter is) also to make possible in the soul worldly enjoyment, pain, life (and) death. [This must be so, as all karmas are material] Matter also affects matter. Therefore उपग्रह Upagraha, is used in the Sutra

**SUTRA 21**

परस्परोपग्रहो जीवानाम् ॥ २१ ॥

**Parasparopagraho jivanam.**

(The function) of souls, (i.e., mundane souls is to) support each other.

This is obvious We all depend upon one another The peasant provides corn to humanity ; the weaver clothes , and so on.

**SUTRA 22.**

वर्तनापरिणामक्रियाः परत्वापरत्वे च कालस्य ॥ २२ ॥

**Vartanaparīnamakriyah paratvaparatve cha kalasya.**

And (the function) of Time (is to help substances in their) being

(in their continuing to exist, i. e., in the continuous change in their attributes at every moment) (in their) modifying, (in their) movement, (and in their) long and short duration

The being or continuing to exist is done by निश्चयकाल *Nischaya-kala*, i. e., real time substance.

The other three functions are the basis of व्यवहारकाल *Vyavahara-kala*, i. e., of time, from a practical point of view which is based upon the motion of matter sun, moon, earth, etc., in space.

### SUTRA 23

स्पर्शरसगन्धवर्णवन्तः पदगता ॥ २३ ॥

**Sparsharasagandhavarnavantah pudgalah.**

Material (substances) are possessed of touch, taste, smell and colour—matter is in the form of an atom (Anu), or a molecule (Skandha). Touch, taste, smell and colour are respectively of 8, 5, 2, and 5 kinds. An atom has only 5 of these 20 at a time, i. e., one each of taste, smell and colour and 2 of touch, hot or cold and smooth or rough. A molecule has 7, one each of taste, smell and colour, and 4 of touch, hot or cold, smooth or rough, hard or soft, and heavy or light.

### SUTRA 24

शब्दबन्धसौदम्यं स्थौल्यसम्यनभेदतमश्छायातपोद्योतवन्तश्च ॥ २४ ॥

**Shabdabandhasauksmyasthaulyasamsthanabhedatamashch-hayatapodyotavantashcha.**

And they (material substances) are possessed of, (i. e., their manifestations take the form of )

शब्द, *Shabda*, sound ; like vocal sounds, music, etc.

Note.—Sound is produced by one group of molecules striking against another group as a hand striking the stretched skin on a kettle drum, this is the external cause of sound, but the sound affects the vocal molecules which fill the whole universe, they are set in motion and bring the sounds to our sense of hearing, it is the internal cause.

Sound is of two kinds :

- (1) वैश्वेयिक *Vaisveshika*—produced by nature alone as thunder, roar of ocean, thunder of clouds, etc.

(2) प्रायोगिक *Prayogika*—produced in connection with men, etc.

Sound is also divided into two—

(1) अभाषात्मक *Abhasatmaka*—unspoken, or which is not uttered by mouth. This is—

(1) प्रायोगिक *Prayogika*—caused by men, etc

as (1) तत *Tata*—sounds from stringed instruments as vīṇa, etc.

(2) वितत *Vitata*—sounds from drum, kettle-drum, etc.

(3) घन *Ghana*—Sound from cymbals, kartala, etc

(4) सुषिर *Susira*—sound from flute, etc

and (5) वैशेषिक *Vaishesika*—caused by nature spontaneously as thunder, etc.

(2) भाषात्मक *Bhasatmaka*—spoken or speech uttered with the mouth, speech

It is of two kinds

1 अनङ्गत्मक *Anakṣaratmaka*—non-alphabetical or the speech of animals having 2 or more senses,

2 अक्षररमक *Akṣaratmaka*—alphabetical as Sanskrit, prakṛita and various other Aryan or non-aryan languages.

Note.—For further details vide *Dravya Samgraha* Vol I of S B J. Appendix page lviii

बन्ध, *Bandha*, union caused by man or otherwise, like chemical changes in clouds, electricity, etc

सौक्ष्म्य, *Saukṣmya*, fineness; like light compared with a table.

स्थौल्य, *Sthaulya*, grossness, e.g., iron or wood compared with water;

संस्थान, *Sansthana*, figure; geometrical and other diagrams,

भेद, *Bheda*, partibility, like split peas flour or gold leaf from gold, etc.

तम, *Tama*, darkness,

छाया, *Chhaya*, shade;

आतप, *Atapa*, sun-shine; and

उद्योत, *Udyota*, moon light

## SUTRA 25

अणवः स्कन्धाश्च ॥ २५ ॥

**Anava skandhascha.**

(Matter has 2 chief forms.) atom and molecule.

### SUTRA 26

भेदसंघातेभ्य उत्पद्यन्ते ॥ २६ ॥

**Bhedasanghatebhya utpadyante**

(Molecules) are formed (in 3 ways :)

- (1) By division ; (as a penny cut into its smallest possible pieces. Each piece will retain the composition of the matter of the penny.)
- (2) By fusion ; (as a drop of water, from 2 parts of hydrogen and one of oxygen.
- (3) By both, (i. e., a mixed process of division and fusion, as in cooking.)

### SUTRA 27

भेदादणुः ॥ २७ ॥

**Bhedadanuh.**

Atom (is obtained only) by division (to an infinite extent.)

### SUTRA 28

भेदसंघाताभ्यां चाक्षुषः ॥ २८ ॥

**Bhedasanghatabhyam chaksusah.**

(Molecules can sometimes be decomposed) into (their) visible parts by division and union, e. g., marsh gas treated with chlorine gives methyl chloride and hydrochloric acid. The formula is :

$\text{CH}_4 + \text{Cl}_2 = \text{CH}_3\text{Cl} + \text{HCl}$ . [P. 27 of Organic Chemistry People's Books.]

### SUTRA 29

सद्द्रव्यलक्षणम् ॥ २९ ॥

**Saddravyalaksanam.**

The differentia of substance (is) sat, being or isness.

### SUTRA 30

उत्पादव्ययध्रौव्ययुक्तं सत् ॥ ३० ॥

**Utpadavyayadhrauvyayuktam sat.**

Sat (is a) simultaneous possession.

- (of) उत्पाद, *Utpada*, coming into existence, birth ,  
 व्यय, *Vyaya*, going out of existence, decay , and  
 ध्रौव्य, *Dhruvya*, continuous sameness of existence, permanence.

The meaning is that the substance remains the same, but its condition always changes, e.g., a man is in anger and forgiveness supervenes, his angry soul is replaced by a forgiving one, i.e., the forgiving condition comes into existence at the same time as anger goes out of existence, and all through the soul continues the same. उत्पाद *Utpada* and व्यय *Vyaya* are of 2 kinds

स्वनिमित्त *Svanimitta*, in the pure substance itself due to modification in the attribute of individuality, अगुरुलघुत्व *Agurulaghutva*, on account of the substance Time, and परनिमित्त *Paranimitta*, modification in the impure substance with the auxiliary help of another substance, e.g., in धर्म *Dharma* and अधर्म *Adharma*, आकाश *Akasha* and काल *Kala*, which have only स्वनिमित्त *Svanimitta*, kind of *Utpada* and *Vyaya*. The maturity of karmas is the paranimitta (by the shedding of some karmic matter) of a change in the thought-activity of the soul.

### SUTRA 31

तद्भावव्ययं नित्यम् ॥ ३१ ॥

**Tadbhavavyayam nityam.**

'Permanence' (means) indestructibility of the essence (or quality) of the substance.

### SUTRA 32

अपितानपितसिद्धेः ॥ ३२ ॥

**Arpitanarpitasiddheh**

The determination (of substances is done by) giving prominence (to their indestructible essence and giving a) secondary place (to their changeable condition as it is necessary for their full consideration, because the permanent and the changeable aspect, though existing simultaneously, cannot be described simultaneously

Similarly in other pairs of contradictory characteristics, one must receive primary and the other secondary consideration.

### SUTRA 33

स्निग्धरूक्षत्वाद्वन्धः ॥ ३३ ॥

**Snigdharuksatvadvandhah.**

(The atoms of matter) unite (or become one to form a molecule,) in virtue of their qualities of smoothness and roughness. Smooth can unite with smooth; rough with rough; or smooth and rough with each other.

### SUTRA 34

न जघन्यगुणानाम् ॥ ३४ ॥

**Na jaghanyagunanam.**

(There is) no (union of atoms) with an atom with the minimum degree (of smoothness or roughness to form a molecule.)

### SUTRA 35

गुणसाम्ये सदृशानाम् ॥ ३५ ॥

**Gunasamyē sadrīṣānam.**

(Atoms) with equal degree (of smoothness or roughness) of the (condition, i. e., smoothness or roughness, cannot unite with an atom of their own or of the opposite condition.)

### SUTRA 36

द्व्यधिकादिगुणानां तु ॥ ३६ ॥

**Dvyadhikādi guṇānam tu.**

But (atoms) of 2 or more degrees can unite.)

An atom will unite when there is a difference of 2 degrees of smoothness or roughness between it, and the atom with which it can unite. Thus an atom with 2 degrees can unite with an atom with 4 degrees of smoothness or roughness, but neither less nor more. Thus it cannot unite with an atom with 3 or 5 or more degrees, of course, it cannot unite with an atom with 2 degrees or are degree under Sutras 35 and 34 respectively.

### SUTRA 37

बन्धेऽधिकौ पारिणामिकौ च ॥ ३७ ॥

**Bandheadhikau parinamikau cha.**

In the union (the atom) with a higher degree (of smoothness or roughness) absorbs (the one with the lower degree into itself.)



**SUTRA 38**

गुणपर्यवयवद्रव्यम् ॥ ३८ ॥

**Gunaparyavayadravyam.**

Substance is possessed of attributes and modifications.

गुण, Attributes, are अवयवी *Anvayi*, i.e., they co-exist with substance.पर्याय, Modifications are व्यतिरेकी *Vyatireki*, i.e., they succeed each other.**SUTRA 39**

कालश्च ॥ ३९ ॥

**Kalascha.**

Kala or Time (is) also (a substance)

**SUTRA 40**

मोजन्तसमयः ॥ ४० ॥

**So nuntasamayah.**

That (Time has) infinite Samayas, Samaya is the modification of time. असम *Samaya* is the time taken by the smallest particle of matter in going from one point of time to the next point called कालाणु *Kalanu*.

**SUTRA 41**

द्रव्याश्रया निर्गुणा गुणाः ॥ ४१ ॥

**Dravyasraya nirguna gunah.**

(Gunas or) attributes depend upon substance, (and are never without it. An attribute as such) cannot be the substratum of another attribute, (although, of course, many attributes can co-exist in one and the same substance at one and the same time and place) There cannot be an attribute of an attribute.

**SUTRA 42**

तद्भावः परिणामः ॥ ४२ ॥

**Tadbhavaḥ parinamah.**

The becoming of that (is) modification. परिणाम *Parinama* or modification of a substance is the change in the character of its attributes.

# अध्याय छहवां

## CHAPTER VI

### SUTRA 1

कायवाङ्मनः कर्म योगः ॥ १ ॥

**Kayavaṇanahkarma yogaḥ.**

Yoga (is the name of vibrations set in the soul by) the activity of body, speech or mind.

योग, *Yoga* is the name of a faculty of the soul itself, to attract matter, under the influence of past karmas. The activity of mind, body and speech brings this faculty into play.

क्वाययोग, *Kaya-yoga* is caused by the क्षयोपशम *Ksayopshama*, destruction-subsidence of वैश्वानराय *Viryantaraya*, power-obstructive karmas, and by the support of material molecules of the different kinds of bodies

वचनयोग, *Vachana yoga*, is caused by the operation of the body-karma and by the destruction-subsidence of power-obstructive and knowledge-obscuring-karmas, and by the support of vocal molecules.

मनयोग, *Manayoga* is caused by the destruction-subsidence of knowledge-obscuring and obstructive karmas, and by the support of the molecules, which go to form mind.

### SUTRA 2

स आसृव ॥ २ ॥

**Sa asravaḥ**

This (yoga) is the channel of Asrava (or inflow of karmic matter into the soul.)

### SUTRA 3

शुभ पुण्यस्याशुभ. पापस्य ॥ ३ ॥

**Subhah punyasya subhah papasya**

Asrava is of 2 kinds - शुभ *Shubha* or good (which is the inlet) of virtue or meritorious karmas, अशुभ *Ashubha* or bad (which is the inlet of vice or demeritorious karmas).

## SUTRA 4

सकषायोकषाययोः साम्परायिकेयपथयोः ॥ ४ ॥

**Sakasayakasayayoh samparayikeryapathayoh.**

(Souls) affected with the passions (have) साम्परायिक *Samparayika* or mundane (inflow, i.e., inflow of karmic matter which causes the cycle of births and rebirths. Those) without the passions (have) ईयापथ, *Iryapatha*, transient or fleeting (inflow). Mundane inflow is in the first ten, and transient inflow in the 11th, 12th and 13th stages (Gunasthana). There is no inflow in the 14th stage

## SUTRA 5

इन्द्रियकषायव्रतक्रियाः पञ्चचतुःपञ्चपञ्चविंशतिसंख्याः पूर्वस्य भेदा ॥५॥

**Indriyakasayavratakriyah panchachatuhpanchapanchvinsatis-  
ankhyahpurvasya bhedah**

The kinds of the first, (i.e., mundane inflow are 39 in) number  
(5 Caused by the activity of the) 5 Senses इन्द्रिय ;

(4 " " " " ) 4 Passions कषाय ,

(5 " " " " ) 5 (Kinds of) vowlessness व्रत ,

(25 " " " ) 25 (kinds of) activity क्रिया (as follows)

- (1) सम्यक्त्वक्रिया, *Samyaktva-kriya*, that which strengthens right belief, e.g., worship, etc ,
- (2) मिथ्यात्वक्रिया, *Mithyatva-kriya*, that which strengthens wrong belief, e.g , superstition, etc ,
- (3) प्रयोगक्रिया, *Prayoga-kriya*, bodily movement ,
- (4) समादानक्रिया, *Samadana-kriya* tendency to neglect vows, after having taken them,
- (5) ईयापवक्रिया, *Iryapatha-kriya*, walking carefully by looking on the ground (for living beings which may be trod upon and thus injured)
- (6) प्रादोषिकीक्रिया, *Pradosiki-kriya*, tendency to accuse others in anger ;
- (7) कायिकीक्रिया, *Kayiki-kriya*, a wicked man's readiness to hurt others ,
- (8) अधिक्करयिकीक्रिया, *Adhikaraniki-kriya*, having weapons of hurtfulness ;

- (9) पारितापिकीक्रिया, Paritapiki-kriya, any thing which may cause mental pain to oneself or others ;
- (10) प्राणातिपातिकीक्रिया, Pranatipatiki-kriya, depriving another of vitalities of age, sense-organs, powers and respiration ;
- (11) दर्शनक्रिया, Darshana-kriya, infatuated desire to see a pleasing form ,
- (12) स्पर्शनक्रिया, Sparshana-kriya, frivolous-indulgence in touching
- (13) प्रात्ययिकीक्रिया, Pratyayiki-kriya, inventing new sense-enjoyments ,
- (14) समन्तापाननक्रिया, Samantapatana-kriya, answering call of nature in a place frequented by men, women, and animals ,
- (15) अनाभोगीक्रिया, Anabhoga-kriya, indifference in dropping things or throwing oneself down upon the earth, i.e., without seeing whether it is swept or not
- (16) स्वहस्तक्रिया, Svahasta-kriya, undertaking to do by one's own hand, what should be done by others ,
- (17) निसर्गकीक्रिया, Nisarga-kriya, admiration of hurtful or unrighteous things ,
- (18) विदारणक्रिया, Vidarana-kriya, proclaiming other's sins ,
- (19) आज्ञाव्यापारिकाक्रिया, Ajna-vyapadiki-kriya, misinterpreting the scriptural injunctions, which we do not want to follow ,
- (20) अनाकर्षक्रिया, Anakanks-kriya, disrespect to scriptural injunctions out of vice or laziness ,
- (21) पराम्बन्धक्रिया, Prarambha-kriya, engaging in harmful activities or expressing delight in other's misdeeds ;
- (22) परिग्रहिकीक्रिया, Parigrahiki-kriya, trying to persevere in one's attachment to worldly belongings ,
- (23) मायाक्रिया, Maya-kriya, deceitful disturbance of some one's right knowledge and faith ,
- (24) मिथ्यादर्शनक्रिया, Mithya-darshan-kriya, praising actions due to wrong belief ; and
- (25) अप्रत्याख्यानक्रिया, Apratyakhya-kriya, not renouncing what ought to be renounced.

Note that the Senses, Passions and Vowlessness are the causes and the 25 kinds of activity are their effects.



## SUTRA 6

तीव्रमन्दज्ञाताज्ञातभावाधिकरणवीर्यविशेषेभ्यस्तद्विशेषः ॥ ६ ॥

**Tivramandajñatājñatābhavādhikaranāvīryaviśeṣebhyaśta-dviśeṣaḥ.**

The differences in inflow (in different souls caused by the same activity arise) from differences in (the following :) )

- (1) तीव्रभाव, Intensity of desire or thought-activity.
- (4) मन्दभाव, Mildness.
- (3) ज्ञातभाव, Intentional character (of the act.)
- (4) अज्ञातभाव, Unintentional character (of the act.)
- (5) अधिकरण, Dependence.
- (6) वीर्य, (one's own position and) power (to do the act.)

## SUTRA 7

अधिकरण जीवाजीवाः ॥ ७ ॥

**Adhikaranam jīvājīvaḥ.**

The "Dependence" (relates to) the souls (and) the non-souls.

## SUTRA 8

आद्यं सरम्भसमारम्भयोगकृतकारितानुमतकषायविशेषै-

स्त्रिस्त्रिस्त्रिश्चतुश्चैकशः ॥ ८ ॥

**Ādyam samrambhasamārambhayogakṛitakaritanumatakasaya viśeṣaistristristriśchatushchaikashah.**

The first जीवाधिकरण, (i. e., dependence on the souls is of 108) kinds (due to) differences (in the following :) )

1. सरम्भ, *Samrambha*, Determination (to do a thing.)
2. समारम्भ, *Samārambha*, Preparation (for it), i. e., collecting materials for it.
3. आरम्भ, *Ārambha*, commencement (of it.)

(These) three (can be done by the) (three योग yogas, (i. e., activity of mind, body and speech, thus there are  $3 \times 3 = 9$  kinds. Each one of the 9 kinds can be done in) three (ways, i. e.,) by doing oneself, or having it done by others, or by approval or acquiescence. (Thus we get 27 kinds. Each one of the 27 may be due to) the 4 Passions. (That gives us  $27 \times 4 = 108$  kinds. Thus the Jain rosary has 108 beads one for each of these 108 Jivādhikaranas.

These 108 kinds can become of 432 kinds, if we consider each Passion in its 4 aspects of अनन्तानुबन्धा Error-feeding, अप्रत्याख्यान Partial-vow-preventing, प्रत्याख्यान Total-vow-preventing and सत्त्वजन Perfect-right conduct-preventing.)

## SUTRA 9

निर्वर्तनानिक्षेपसयोगनिसर्गा द्विचतुर्द्वित्रिभेदाः परम् ॥ ९ ॥

**Nirvartananiksepasamyoganisarga dvichaturdvitribhedah param.**

The other अर्जवाचकरण, (i. e. Dependence on the non-soul is of the following 11 kinds :)

- 2 (kinds of) निर्बर्तन. Production [(1) मूलगुण Mulaguna, of the body, speech, mind and respiration, (2) उत्तरगुण Uttaraguna, of books, pictures, statues, etc.]
- 4 (kinds of) निक्षेप. Putting down [a thing (1) अप्रत्य वेक्षित Apratya veksita, without seeing, (2) दुःप्रमृष्ट Duhpramrsta, petulantly, peevishly, (3) सहसा Sahasa, hurriedly and (4) अनाभोग Ana-bhoga, where it ought not to be put.]
- 2 (kinds of) सयोग mixing up [(1) भक्षपान Bhakta-pana food and drink, (2) उपकरण Upkarana, mixing up of things necessary for doing any act.]
- 3 (kinds of) निसर्ग, movement [by (1) काय Kaya body, (2) वाक् Vanga speech, and (3) मन Mana mind.]

11 Total.

## SUTRA 10

तत्प्रदोषनिहृवमात्सर्यान्तरायासादनोपघाता ज्ञानदर्शनावारणयोः

**Tatpradosa ninhava matsaryantarayasadanopaghata jnanadarshanavaranyoh.**

- (1) प्रदोष, Depreciation of the learned (scriptures.)
- (2) निहृव, Concealment of knowledge.
- (3) मात्सर्य, Envy ; jealousy. Refusal to impart knowledge out of envy.
- (4) अन्तराय, Obstruction. Hindering the progress of knowledge.
- (5) आसादना, Denying the truth proclaimed by another, by body and speech.
- (6) उपघात, Refuting the truth, although it is known to be such.

## SUTRA 11

दुःखशोकतापाक्रन्दनबधपरिवेदनान्यात्मप रोभयस्थान्य सद्दृष्टस्य ॥ ११ ॥

**Duhkhashokatapakrandanabadhaparivedananyatmaparobha-yasthanyasadvedyasya.**

(The inflow) of pain bringing-feeling (असातावेदनीय *Asata-vedaniya*) karmic matter (is due to the following.)

(1) दुःख *Duhkha*, pain (2) शोक *shoka*, sorrow (3) ताप *tapa*, repentance, remorse (4) आक्रन्दन *Akrandana*, weeping. (5) बध *badha*, depriving of vitality (6) परिवेदना *parivedna*, piteous or pathetic moaning to attract compassion

(These 6 can be produced) in ones own self, in another, or both (in one self and another. Thus there are 18 forms of this inflow.

## SUTRA 12

भूतव्रत्यनुकम्पादानसरागसयमादियोगः क्षान्तिःशौचमिति सद्दृष्टस्य ॥ १२ ॥

**Bhutavratyanu-kampadanasaragasamyamadiyogah ksanti shauchamiti sadvedyasya.**

(1) भूतानुकम्पा *Bhutanukampa*, compassion for all living beings, (2) व्रत्यानुकम्पा *vratyanukampa*, compassion for the vowers, (3) दान *Dana*, charity, (4) सरागसयम *saraga-samyama* self-control with slight attachment, etc., [i. e., (5) संयमसंयम *samyamasamyama*, restrain by vows of some, but not of other passions, (6) अकामनिर्जरा *Akama-nirjara*, equanimous submission to the fruition of karma, (7) बालतप *Balatapa*, austerities not based upon right knowledge] (8) योग *Yoga*, contemplation, (9) क्षान्ति *Ksanti*, forgiveness, and (10) शौच *Shaucha*, contentment—these (are the cause of inflow) of pleasure-bearing feeling karmic matter, (सातावेदनीय, *Sata vedaniya*).

## SUTRA 13

केवलश्रुतसंघधर्मदेवावर्णवादो दर्शनमोहस्य ॥ १३ ॥

**Kevalishrutasanghadharmadevavarnavadodarshanamohasya.**

(The inflow) of दर्शनमोहनीय (*Darshanmohanīya*), right-belief-deluding karmic matter (is caused by) अवर्णवाद *avarnavada*, defaming the Omniscient Lord अर्हत् *Arhat*, (i. e., केवलि *Kevali*, the Scriptures (ग्रन्थ) *Shruta*, the Saint's brother-hoods, (संघ) *Sangha*, the true religion, (धर्म)

*Dharma*, and the Celestial beings, (देवाः : *devah*), e. g. saying that the celestial beings take meat or wine, etc. and to offer these as sacrifices to them.

### SURTA 14

कषायोदयात्तोत्रपरिणामश्चारित्रमोहस्य ॥ १४ ॥

**Kasayodayattivraparinamashcharitramohasya.**

(The inflow) of चरित्र मोहनीय right-conduct-deluding karmic matter (is caused by the) intense thought-activity produced by the rise of the passions (and of the quasi-passions no-kasaya).

e g. Joking about Truth, etc., disinclination to take vows, etc. indulging in evil society, etc.

### SUTRA 15

बह्वारम्भपरिग्रहत्वं नारकस्यायुषः ॥ १५ ॥

**Bahvarambhaparigrahatvam narakasyayusah.**

(As to the age-karma) the inflow of नारकायुकर्म *narakayukarma*, hellishage karma (is caused by too) much wordly activity and by attachment to (too) many worldly objects or by (too) much attachment.

e g. committing breaches of the first five vows of non-killing, truth non-stealing, chastity, non-attachment to worldly possessions.

### SUTRA 16

माया तैर्यग्योनय ॥ १६ ॥

**Maya tairyagyonasya,**

(The inflow) of तैर्यग्योनि *tiryagyoni*, sub-human-age-karma (is caused by) माया *Maya*, deceit.

e g. cheating others, preaching the false doctrine, etc.

### SUTRA 17

अल्पारम्भपरिग्रहत्वं मानुषस्य ॥ १७ ॥

(The inflow) of मानुषायु *manusyayu* human-age-karma (is caused by) slight worldly activity and by attachment to a few worldly objects of by slight attachment.



## SUTRA 18

स्वभावमार्दव च ॥ १८ ॥

Svabhava mardavacha.

Natural humble disposition is also the cause of human-age karma  
(मनुष्यायुक्म),

## SUTRA 19

निःशीलव्रतत्व च सर्वेषाम् ॥ १९ ॥

Nishhivilvratatvam cha Sarvesam

Vowlessness and sub vowlessness with (slight worldly activity and slight attachment), (is cause of inflow) of all (kinds of age-karmas)

Not taking the vows of laymen and not adopting the restrictions (शील *shila*), but having slight attachment to the world and activity in it, can be the cause of the inflow of age-karmic matter of all four kinds.

## SUTRA 20

सरागसंयमसंयमासयमाकांक्षानिर्जरावालतामिदं वस्य ॥ २० ॥

Saragasamsamasyama-samyamakamanirjarabalatapamais  
daivasya.

(The inflow) of देवायु celestial-age-karma (is caused by):

- (1) सरागसंयम *Saraga-samyama*, self-control with slight attachment [found in monks only].

संयमसंयमा *Samyamasamyama*, restraint of vows of some, but not of other 'passions', [found in laymen only.]

अकामनिर्जरा *Akama-nirjara*, equanimous submission to the fruition of karma.

- (4) वाजतप *Balatapu* authorities not based upon right knowledge

## SUTRA 21

सम्यक्त्व च ॥ २१ ॥

Samyaktvam cha

Right-belief (is) also (the cause of celestial-age-karmas, but only of the heavenly order. It applies to human and sub-human only. A celestial or hellish right-believer binds the human age-karma. Note also that if a human or sub-human beings has bound a particular

age-karma before gaining right belief, he must enjoy that. See also Jiva Kanda, 292, 527, 645. Karma Kanda 158.

### SUTRA 22

योगवक्रता विसवादनं चाशुभस्य नाम्नः ॥ २२ ॥

**Yogavakrata visamvadanam chasubhasya namnah.**

(The inflow) of अशुभनाम *Ashubhanama*, bad body-making karma (is caused by a) non-straight forward (or deceitful working) of the mind, body or speech (or) by (विमवाद *Visamvada*,) wrangling, etc, Wrong-belief, Envy, Back-biting, Self-praise, Censuring and others, etc )

### SUTRA 23

तद्विपरीतं शुभस्य ॥ २३ ॥

**Tadviparitam shubhasya.**

(The inflow) of शुभनाम good-body-making karma (is caused by the causes) opposite of the above, (i.e., by straight-forward dealings with body, mind and speech, by avoiding disputes, etc. right-belief, humility, admiring praise worthy people, etc )

### SUTRA 24

दर्शनविशुद्धिं विनश्यदम्पन्नता शीलव्रतेष्वनतीचारोऽभीक्ष्णज्ञानोपयोग-  
सवेगो यकिततस्यागतपगो ग्राधममाधिर्वैयावृत्यकरगमर्हदाचार्यबहुश्रुतप्रवचन-  
भक्तिगन्तव्यकापट्टिगिर्मार्गिभारतागचनयत्मत्वमितितीर्थकरत्वम्य ॥ २४ ॥

**Darshanavishuddhirvinayampannata shilavratesvanati-  
charoabhiksenanjananopayogasamvegau shaktitastyagatapasi sad-  
husamadbirvaiyavrittyakaranamarbadacharyabahushrutaprava-  
chanabhaktiravashyakaparihanirmargaprabhavanapravachan-  
avatsalatva-miti tirthamkaratvasya.**

(The inflow) of तन्मकरकमे *Tanthamkara*, body making karma [is caused by meditation (भावना *Bhavana*) of the following 16 matters ]

1. दर्शन विशुद्धि *Darshana-vishuddhi*, Purity of right-belief.

Pure right belief is with 8 Angas or the following 8 qualities :—

1 निश्शङ्कित *Nishshankita* Free from all doubt.

2 निष्कामिन *Nishkamita*. Freefrom worldly desire

3. निर्विचिकित्सित *Nirvichikitsita*. Free from repulsion from anything.
4. अमूढदृष्टि *Amudhadristi*. Free from superstitious belief.
5. उपबृहत् *Upabrihanam* or (more popularly), उपगृह्ण *Upaguhana*. Free from a tendency to proclaim the faults of others.
6. स्थितीकरण *Shutikarana*. To help oneself or others to remain steady in the path of truth
7. वात्सल्य *Vatsalya*. Tender affection for one's brothers on the path of Liberation.
8. प्रभावना *Prabhavana* Propagation of the path of Liberation.
2. विनयसम्पन्ना *Vinaya-sampannata* Reverence for means of Liberation and for those who follow them
3. शूलव्रतेष्वनतिचार *Shulvratēsvanatichara*. Faultless observance of the 5 vows, and a faultless subdual of the passions.
4. अभिदृष्टानुलोपयोग *Abhiksana-jnanopayoga*, Ceaseless pursuit of right knowledge
5. समवेग *Samvega*. Perpetual apprehension of mundane miseries.
6. शक्तितस्तपन *Shaktitastayaga*. Giving up (for others of knowledge etc.) according to one's capacity.
7. शक्तितस्तप *Shaktitastapah* The practice of austerities, according to one's capacity.
8. साधुसमाधि *Sadhu-samadhi* Protecting and reassuring the saints or removing their troubles.
9. वैयवृत्त्यकरण *Varyavritttya karana* Serving the meritorious.
10. अर्हद्भक्ति *Arhadbhakti*. Devotion to Arhats or Omniscient Lords
11. आचार्यभक्ति *Acharyabhakti* Devotion to Acharyas or Heads of the orders of saints
12. बहुश्रुतभक्ति *Bahusrutabhakti* Devotion to Upadhyayas (उपाध्याय) or teaching saints
13. प्रवचनभक्ति *Pravachanabhakti* Devotion to Scriptures.
14. आवश्यकापरिहरण *Avashyakaparīhani*. Not neglecting one's (6 important daily) duties.
15. मार्गप्रभावना *Margaprabhavana*. Propagation of the path of Liberation
16. प्रवचनवत्सल्य *Pravachana-vatsalatva*. Tender affection for one's brothers the path of liberation.

Even one of these if properly contemplated and with right belief brings about the inflow of Tirthakara-body-making karma.

## SUTRA 25

परात्मनिन्दाप्रशंसे सदसद्गुणोच्छादनोद्भावने च नीचैर्गोत्रस्य ॥२५॥

**Paratmanindaprasamse sadasadgunochchhadanodbhavan  
cha nichairgotrasya.**

(The inflow) of नीचगोत्र low-family-determining karma (is caused by : )

1. परनिन्दा *Paraninda*, speaking ill of others ;
2. आत्मप्रशंसा *Atmaprasansa*, praising oneself ,
3. सद्गुणोच्छादन *Sadgunochchhadan*, concealing the good qualities of others , and
4. असद्गुणोद्भावन *Asadgunodbhavan*, proclaiming in oneself the good qualities which one does not possess.

## SUTRA 26

तद्विपर्ययो नीचैर्नृत्यनुत्सेकौ चोत्तरस्य ॥ २६ ॥

**Tadviparyayo nichairvrityanutsekau chottarasya.**

(The inflow) of the next, ( i.e. उच्चगोत्र high-family-determining karma is caused by ) the opposite of the above, ( i.e. by .)

1. परप्रशंसा *Paraprasamsa*, praising others ,
2. आत्मनिन्दा *Atmaninda*, denouncing one's self ,
3. सद्गुणोद्भावन *Sadgunodbhavana*, proclaiming the good qualities of others ,
4. असद्गुणोच्छादन *Asadgunochchhadana*, not proclaiming one's own ,
5. नीचैर्वृत्ति *Nichairvritti*, an attitude of humility towards one's better ,
6. अनुत्सेक *Anutseka*, not being proud of one's own achievements or attainments.

## SUTRA 27

विघ्नकरणमन्तरायस्य ॥ २७ ॥

**Vighnakaranamantrayasya.**

(The inflow) of obstructive (इन्तराय *Antaraya*) karma (is caused by) disturbing others (in दान charity ; लाभ gain ; भोग enjoyment of consumable things ; उपभोग enjoyment of non-consumable things ; and नीचैर्निर्माण making use of their powers ).

NOTE—The inflow of 7 karmas, i. e. of all except the age-karma, is going on always, in souls influenced by the Passion, and of the age-karma also on special occasions. But the predominance of the above causes will determine the intensity of fruition (Anubhaga) of their particular inflow.

The special occasions of age-karma are 8 in one man's life, as follows. Supposing a man's life is to be 81 years long. The first will be on his passing  $\frac{1}{3}$  of it, i. e. when he is 54. The second on his passing  $\frac{1}{3}$  of the remainder, i. e. when he is 72. The third on his passing  $\frac{1}{3}$  of the remainder, i. e. when he is 78. Fourth on his passing  $\frac{1}{3}$  of the remainder again, i. e. when he is 80. And similarly the fifth when he is 80 years, and 8 months. The sixth at 80 years, 10 months and 20 days. The seventh at 80 years, 11 months, 16 days and 16 hours. The eighth at 80 years, 11 months, 25 days, 13 hours and 20 minutes. If not then the ninth is the last moment.



# अध्याय सातवां

## CHAPTER VII

### SUTRA 1

हिंसाञ्जितस्तेयाब्रह्मपरिग्रहेभ्यो विरतिर्व्रतम् ॥ १ ॥

**Himsaanritasteyabrahmaparigrahebhyo viratirvratam.**

व्रत *Vrata* or vow is to be free from :

- (1) हिंसा *Himsa*, injury ,
- (2) अनृत *Anrita*, falsehood ,
- (3) स्तेय *Steya*, theft ,
- (4) अब्रह्म *Abrahma*, unchastity , and
- (5) परिग्रह *Parigraha*, worldly attachment , (or worldly objects).

### SUTRA 2

देशसर्वतोऽणुमहती ॥ २ ॥

**Deshasarvatoanumahati.**

(Vows are of 2 kinds :)

1. अणुव्रत, *Anuvrata*. partial vow (that is, limited abstention from the five faults given above) ,
2. महाव्रत *Mahavrata*, full vow, (i. e., total abstention.)

### SUTRA 3

तत्संन्यासार्थं भावनः पञ्च पञ्च ॥ ३ ॥

**Tatasthairyartham bhavanah panch panch.**

For the fixing of these (5 vows in the mind, these are) 5 (kinds of) meditation (भावन *bhavana*, for) each (of the vows.)

### SUTRA 4

वाङ्मनोगुप्तीर्यादाननिक्षेपणसमित्यालोकितपानभोजनानि पञ्च ॥ ४ ॥

**Vanganoguptiryadananiaksepanasamitya  
lokitapanabhajanani pancha.**

The 5 (meditations for the vow against injury are )

1. वाग्युति *Vaggupti*, Preservation of speech ;
2. मनोगुति *Manogupti*, Preservation of mind ;
3. ईशो *Irya*, Care in walking ;
4. आदान-निक्षेप-समिति *Adana-niksepana-samiti*, Care in lifting and laying down things,
5. आलोकितपान भोजन *Alokitapana-bhojan*, thoroughly seeing to one's food and drink.

### SUTRA 5

क्रोधलोभभीरुत्वहास्यप्रत्याख्यानान्यनुवीचि भाषणं च पञ्च ॥ ५ ॥

**Krodhalobhabhirutvahasypratyakhyananyanvichi  
bhasanam cha pancha.**

And five (meditations for the vow against falsehood :) )

1. क्रोध प्रत्याख्यान, *Krodha-pratyakhyana*, Giving up anger ;
2. लोभ *Lobha*, " " " " greed ;
3. भीरुत्व *Bhirutva*, " " " " cowardice or fear
4. हास्य प्रत्याख्यान, *Hasya* " " " Giving up of frivolity ;
5. अनुवीची भाषण, *Anuvichi-bhasana*. Speaking in accordance with scriptural injunctions.

### SUTRA 6

शून्यागारविमोचितावासपरोपरोधाकरणभैक्ष्यशुद्धि सधर्माविसंवादाः पञ्च ॥ ६ ॥

**Shunyagaravimochitavasaparoparodhakaranabhaiskyashuddhi sadharmaavisamvadah panch.**

(For the vow against theft, the) five (meditations are :) )

1. शून्यागार, *Shunyagara*, Residence in a solitary place, like a mountain cave, etc. ;
2. विमोचितावास, *Vimochitavasa*, Residence in a deserted place ;
3. परोपरोधाकरण, *Paroparodhakarana*, Residence in a place where one is not likely to be prohibited by others, nor where one should be likely to prohibit others ;
4. भैक्ष्यशुद्धि, *Bhaiksyasuddhi*, Purity of alms, according to the scriptures ;
5. सधर्माविसंवाद, *Saddharmavisamvada*, Not disputing with one's co-religionists, as to "mine" and "thine."

## SUTRA 7

स्त्रीरागकथाश्रवणतन्मनोहरांगनिरीक्षणपूर्वरतानु स्मरणवृष्येष्टरसस्वशरीर-  
संस्कारत्यागाः पञ्च ॥ ७ ॥

**Striragakathashravanatanmanoharanganiriksanaapurvaratanu  
smaranavrisyestarasasvasharirasamskaratyagaha pancha.**

For the vow against unchastity, the five (meditations are :)

1. स्त्रीरागकथाश्रवणत्याग *Striraga-katha-shravanatyaga*, Renouncing of (reading or) hearing stories exciting attachment for women ;
2. तन्मनोहरांगनिरीक्षणत्याग *Tanmanoharanga-niriksana-tyaga*, Renouncing of seeing their beautiful bodies ;
3. पूर्वरतानुस्मरणत्याग *Purvaratanusmarana-tyaga*, Renouncing of thinking over, (remembrance of) past enjoyment of women ;
4. वृष्येष्टरसत्याग *Vrisyestarasa-tyaga*, Renouncing of exciting and aphrodisiac drinks ; and
5. स्वशरीरसंस्कारत्याग *Svasharirasamskara-tyaga*, Renouncing of beautifying one's own body , self-adornment.

## SUTRA 8

मनोज्ञामनोज्ञेन्द्रियविषयरागद्वेषवर्जनानि पञ्च ॥ ८ ॥

**Manojnamanojnendriyavisayaragadvesavarjanani pancha.**

(For the vow against worldly attachment, the 5 (meditations are :) giving up or self-denial of love and hatred (रागद्वेष *Raga-dvesa*) in the pleasing (and) displeasing (worldly) objects of the (five) senses.

## SUTRA 9

हिंसादिष्विहामुत्रापयावद्यदरिणम् ॥ ९ ॥

**Himsadisvihamutrapayavyadyadarahanam,**

The destructive or dangerous (and) censurable (character of the 5 faults,) injury, etc., in this (as also) in the next world (ought to be) meditated upon.



## SUTRA 10

दुःखमेव वा ॥ १० ॥

Duhkha-meva va

(One must also meditate, that the five faults, injury, etc. are) pain personified, (as they themselves are the veritable wombs of pain).

## SUTRA 11

मैत्रीप्रमोदकारुण्यमाध्यस्थानि च सत्त्वगुणाधिकत्किक्ष्यमानाऽविनयेषु ॥ ११ ॥

Maitripramodakarunyamadhyasthani cha sattvagunadhikalkishyamanavinayesu.

And (we must meditate upon the 4 following .)

1. मैत्री *Maitri*, Benevolence (for) सत्त्वेषु *Satvesu*, all living beings,
2. प्रमोद, *Pramoda*, Delight (at the sight of beings) गुणाधि केषु *Gunadhikesu*, better qualified (or more advanced than ourselves on the path of liberation .)
3. कारुण्य *Karunya*, Pity, Compassion (for) क्लिश्यमानेषु *Klishyamanesu*, the afflicted ;
4. माध्यस्थ *Maddhyastha*, Tolerance or indifference (to those who are) अविनयेषु *Avinayesu*, uncivil or ill-behaved.

## SUTRA 12

जगत्कायस्वभावं वा सवेगवैराग्यार्थम् ॥ १२ ॥

Jagatkayasvabha va uvasamvegavairagyartham.

For सवेग *Samvega*, the apprehension of the miseries of the world and वैराग्य *Vairagya*, non-attachment to sense pleasures, (we should meditate upon) the nature of the world and of our physical body. The world is transitory and not fit for love ; and the body is impure and hampering in spiritual progress and therefore should be subordinated to the soul.

## SUTRA 13

प्रमत्तयोगात्प्राणव्यपरोपणं हिंसा ॥ १३ ॥

Pramattayogatpranavyaparopanam himsa.

By (प्रमत्तयोग), passional vibrations, (प्राणव्यपरोपणं), the hurting of the vitalities, (is) (हिंसा) injury.

Injury on himsa is to hurt the प्राणान् *Pranas* or vitalities, through प्रमत्तयोग *Pramattayoga*, i.e., vibration due to the Passions, which agitate mind, body or speech.

**SUTRA 14**

असदभिधानमनृतम् ॥ १४ ॥

**Asadabhidhanamanritam.**

Falsehood (14) to speak hurtful-words (through प्रमत्तयोग *Pramattayoga*, passional vibrations.)

**SUTRA 15**

अदत्तादानं स्तेयम् ॥ १५ ॥

**Adattadanam steyam.**

Theft (15) to take anything which is not given, (through *Pramattayoga*).

**SUTRA 16**

मैथुनमब्रह्म ॥ १६ ॥

**Maithunamabrahma.**

Unchastity is coition (or sexual contact, through *Pramattayoga*).

**SUTRA 17**

मूर्च्छा परिग्रहा ॥ १७ ॥

**Murchha parigraha.**

Worldly attachment is मूर्च्छा *Murchha*, infatuation (or intoxication through *Pramattayoga*, in the living or non-living objects of the world.)

Worldly objects are said to be *Parigraha*, because they are the external causes of internal attachment.

## SUTRA 18

निःशल्यो व्रती ॥ १८ ॥

Nihshalyo vrati.

A व्रती *Vrati*, or a vower should be without (blemish which is like a) thorn (शल्य *Shalya*, which makes the whole body restless.)

This शल्य *Shalya* or blemish is of 3 kinds :

1. मायाशल्य, *Maya-shalya*, the thorn of deceit.
2. मिथ्याशल्य, *Mithya-shalya*, the thorn of wrong-belief.
3. निदान, *Nidana*, the thorn of Desire for future sense-pleasures.

## SUTRA 19

अगार्यं जगारश्च ॥ १९ ॥

Agaryaanagarshcha.

(Vowers are of 2 kinds :) अगारी *Agari*, house-holders (laymen) and जगार *Anagara*, house-less (ascetics.)

## SUTRA 20

अनुव्रतो जगारी ॥ २० ॥

Anuvratoagari.

(One whose five) vows (are) partial (is) a house-holder.

The house-holder's life has 11 प्रतिमा *Pratimas* or stages :

1. दर्शनप्रतिमा, *Darshana-pratima*. A true Jain must have perfect and intelligent belief in Jainism. He must have a good knowledge of its doctrines and their applications. He must give up meat, wine and honey. He must have a belief free from defects. He must more or less observe the 5 vows.
2. व्रतप्रतिमा *Vrata pratima*. He must observe the 5 Anuvratas without defect, the 3 gunavratas, and 4 Siksavratas. To give details, he must not destroy life, must not tell a lie, must not make unpermitted use of another man's property, must be chaste and must limit his possessions for life (the 5 Anuvartas) he must make a perpetual and a daily vow to go in certain directions and to certain distances only, must avoid useless talk, act or thought of sinful things (the 3

Gunavratas ); and he must limit the articles of his diet and enjoyment for the day, must worship at fixed times in morning, noon and evening, must keep fast on certain days, and must give charity in the way of knowledge, money, etc., every day (the 4 Shikhsavratas ). He must try not to transgress the last seven vows also.

3. सामयिक प्र०, *Samayika P.*, He must meditate faultlessly, regularly, and for fixed hours at mid-day, evening and morning, not less than 48 minutes every time.
4. प्रोषधोपवास प्र०, *Prosadhopavasa P.*, He must fast faultlessly on the 8th and 14th day of every lunar fortnight.
5. सच्चित्तत्याग प्र०, *Sachittatyaga P.*, He must not take Animate vegetable and water. He must follow this faultlessly.
6. रात्रि-भुक्त-त्याग प्र०, *Ratni-bhukta-tyaga P.*, He must not take or give food, or drink at night, this must be faultless.
7. ब्रह्मचर्य्य प्र०, *Brahma charyya P.*, He must give up sexual intercourse even with his wife. This must be faultless.
8. आरम्भत्याग प्र०, *Arambha-tyaga P.*, He must give up his means of livelihood, cooking, etc.
9. परिग्रहत्याग प्र०, *Parigraha-tyaga P.*, He must give up his desire for the objects of the world and be contented with abandoning all his property, except a few clothes and utensils.
10. अनुमतित्याग प्र०, *Anumata-tyaga, P.*, He must not even advise on any worldly activity.
11. उद्दिष्ट्याग प्र०, *Uddista-tyaga P.*, He will beg his food, and refuse what is specially prepared for him. He may be Ksullaka, with a small sheet and loin-cloth; or an Ailaka, with only a loin-cloth, and dining only off his hands. They both carry a pot of water, and a peacock brush. The former carries an alms bowl also.

### SUTRA 21

दिग्देशानर्थदण्डविरतिसामायिकप्रोषधोपवासोपभोग परिभोगपरिमाणा  
तिथिसंविभागव्रतसम्पन्नश्च ॥ २१ ॥

**Digdeshanarthadandaviratisamayikaprosadhopavasopabhogaparibhogaparimanatithisamvibhagavratasampannash cha.**

(The house-holder )must be with (the following 7 supplementary-vows )also;

1. दिग्भक्त *Digvrata*, (Taking a life-long vow) to limit (his worldly activity to fixed points in all the 10) directions, (i. e. East, West, North South, South-east, East-north, North-west, and West-south, and up and down).

2. देशभक्त, *Deshavrata*. (Taking a vow to) limit (the above also for a) shorter (period of time, e. g. for one's weekly or daily worldly activity).

3. अनर्थदण्ड भक्त, *Anarthadanda-vrata*, (Taking a vow) not to commit purposeless sin, (It has 5 kinds ).

(1) अपपचान, *Apadhyana*, Thinking ill of others ;

(2) पापोपदेश, *Papopadesha* Preaching of sin (to others),

(3) प्रमादचारित्र, *Pramada-charitra*. Thoughtless or inconsiderate conduct (as breaking the boughs of trees, etc., without any purpose).

(4) हिसदान, *Himsadana*, Giving objects of offence (to others).

(5) दुःश्रुति, *Duḥshruti*, (reading or ) hearing bad (books.)

The above 3, i. e. Digvrata, Deshavrata and Anarth-dandavrata are called गुणभक्त *Gunavrata*s, multiplicative vows, because they raise the value of the 5 vows (Ahimsa, etc.)

4. सामयिक *Samayika*, (Taking a vow to devote so much time everyday, (once, twice or three times, at sunrise, sunset and noon to ) contemplation of the self (for spiritual advancement.)

5. प्रोषधोपवास, *Prosadhopavasa*, (Taking a vow to) fast (on 4 days of the month, viz., the two अष्टमी 8th and the two चतुर्दशी 14th days of every lunar fort-night.)

(Fast means abstention from food and drink, and devoting one's time to religious study and contemplation, etc.)

6. उपभोग-परिभोग-परिमाण *Upabhoga-paribhoga-parimana*. (Taking a vow every day) limiting one's enjoyment of consumable and non-consumable things.

7. अतिथि संविभाग *Atithi-samvibhaga*. (Taking a vow to take one's food (only after) feeding the ascetics with a part (of it.)

If ascetics are scarce, another person may be fed in their place, if he is observing the vows of a house-holder or is possessed of right belief, or any afflicted or poor person.

These last 4, (i. e., Samayika, Prosadhopavasa, Upabhoga-paribhogaparimana and Atithi-samvibhaga) are called शिषाभक्त *Sikṣavrata*s, disciplinary vows, so called because they are preparatory for the discipline of ascetic's life.

**SUTRA 22**

माग्नान्तिकीं सल्लेखना ज्ञेयिता ॥ २२ ॥

**Maranantikim sallekhanam jñeṣita.**

(The house-holder is also) the observer in the last moment of his life, (of the process of) *sallekhana*, peaceful death (which is characterised by non-attachment to the world and by a suppression of the passions.)

Thus the house-holder's vows are 12, with the last or peaceful death as their supplement.

**SUTRA 23**

शकाकांक्षा विचिकित्सान्यदृष्टिप्रशमासंस्तवा. सम्यग्दृष्टे रतिचाराः ॥ २३ ॥  
**Shankakankṣāvichikitsānyadrīṣṭiprāśamaśaṁstavaḥ samyagdrīṣṭeraticarāḥ.**

(There are 5) defects or partial transgressions (*अतिचाराः*) (which should not be found) in a man of right belief :

1. शंका, *Shanka*, Doubt, Scepticism ,
2. कांक्षा, *Kankṣa*, Desire of sense-pleasures ;
3. विचिकित्सा, *Vichikitsa*, Disgust at anything, e. g., with a sick or deformed person ,
4. अन्यदृष्टिप्रशंसा, *Anyadrīṣṭiprāśamaśa*. Thinking admiringly of wrong believers ,
5. अन्यदृष्टिसंस्तव, *Anyadrīṣṭiśaṁstava*, Praising wrong believers.

**SUTRA 24**

व्रतशीलेषु पञ्च पञ्च यथाक्रमम् ॥ २४ ॥

**Vrata śhīleṣu pañca pañca yathakramam.**

(There are) 5 (defects) respectively in each (of the 5) *व्रत Vrata*, vows, and (7) शील *Shīla*, supplementary vows, (which should be avoided.)

**SUTRA 25**

बन्धबधच्छेदातिभारारोपणान्नपाननिरोधाः ॥ २५ ॥

**Bandha badhachchhedati-bhara ropana nnapana nirodhah.**

(The partial transgressions of the first vow *अहिंसा अण्यज्ञत* are .)

1. बन्ध, (Angrily or carelessly) tying up (an animal or human being.)

2. वय, (Angrily or carelessly beating (an animal or human being).
3. वेद, " " " mutilating " " " "
5. अतिभारोपण, " " " with-holding food or drink from an animal or human being.

### SUTRA 26

मिथ्योपदेशरहोभ्याख्यानकूटलेखक्रियान्यासापहारसाकारमन्त्रभेदाः ॥२६॥

**Mithyopadesha rahobhyakhyana kuta lekha kriya  
nyasapahara sakara mantrabhedah.**

(The partial transgressions of the second vow सत्यव्रत, *Satyavrat*, are :)

1. मिथ्योपदेश, *Mithyopadesha*, Preaching false doctrines.
2. रहो भ्याख्यान, *Rahobhyakhyana*, Divulging the secret (actions of man and woman)
3. कूटलेखक्रिया, *Kutalekhakriya*, Forgery (and perjury.)
4. न्यासापहार, *Nyasapahara*, Unconscientious dealing by means of speech, e. g., A deposits Rs. 1,000 with B, and then thinking that he has deposited only Rs. 900, demands Rs. 900. B says : Yes, take whatever you deposited and gives him Rs. 900. This is *nyasapahar*.
5. साकारमन्त्रभेद, *Sakaramantrabhedah*, Divulging what one guesses by seeing the behaviour or gestures of others, who are consulting in private.

### SUTRA 27

स्तेनप्रयोगनदाहृतदानविरुद्धराज्यातिक्रमहीनाधिकमानोन्मानप्रतिरूपक  
व्यवहाराः ॥ २७ ॥

**Stena prayogatadahritadanaviruddha rajyatikrama  
hinadhika manonmanapratirupaka vyavaharah.**

(The partial transgressions of the third vow अचौर्याणुव्रत *Achauryanuvrat*, are :)

1. स्तेनप्रयोग, *Stenaprayoga*, Abetment of theft
2. नदाहृतदान *Tadahritadana*, Receiving stolen property.
3. विरुद्धराज्यातिक्रम, *Viruddharajyatikrama*, Illegal traffic, (e. g., by selling things at inordinate prices in time of war, or) to alien enemies, etc.

4. हीनाधिकमानोन्मान *Hinadhika-manonmana*, False weights and measures.

5. प्रतिकूपकव्यवहार, *Pratirupaka-vyavahara*, Adulteration,

### SUTRA 28

प रविवाहकरणोत्वरिकापरिगृहीताप रिगृहीतागमनानंगक्रीडाकामती प्राभि-  
निवेशा : ॥ २८ ॥

**Paravivahakaranetvarikaparigrihitaparigrihitaga-  
mananangakrida kamativrabhiniveshah.**

(The partial transgression of the fourth vow ऋत्विज्यं are :)

1. परविवाहकरण *Paravivahakarana*, Bringing about the marriage of people who are not of one's own family.
2. इतरिकापरिगृहीतागमन *Itvarikaparigrahitagamana*, Intercourse with a married immoral woman.
3. इतरिकापरिगृहीतागमन, *Itvarikaaparigrahitagamana*, Intercourse with an unmarried immoral woman.
4. अनङ्गक्रीडा, *Anangakrida*, Unnatural sexual intercourse
5. कामतीव्रप्रभिवेश, *Kamativrabhiniveshah*, Intense sexual desire.

### SUTRA 29

क्षेत्रवास्तुहिरण्यसुवर्णघनधान्यदासीदासकुप्यप्रमाणतिक्रमा : ॥ २९ ॥

**Ksetravastuhiranyasuvarnadhanadhandanyadasidasakupyapramanatikramah.**

Transgressing the limit of fields, houses, silver, gold, cattle, corn, female and male servants, clothes.

NOTE—The partial transgressions of the fifth vow परिग्रहपरिमाणाव्रत, *Parigrahaparimanavrata*, arise when a man limits the quantity of say two kinds of things, but then changes the proportion of those things, although the quantity remains the same, e. g., he limits his land possessions to 4 fields and 2 houses. Then wanting a house more, he acquires 3 houses and reduces the fields by one. Thus though the number and possibly the value of his possessions may remain the same, still the limit of his vow is partially transgressed. This sort of



transgression may be between 5 pairs of possessions as follows:

1. { क्षेत्र, Fields.  
गृह, Houses.
2. { धिरण्य, Silver.  
सुवर्ण, Gold.
3. { पशु, Cattle.  
धान्य, Corn.
4. { दासी, Female-servant.  
दास, Male-servant.
5. { कप्य, Clothes, etc., (i.e. things of toilet, etc.)  
(भाण्ड, Bhandā. crockery or utensils.)

### SUTRA 30

ऊर्ध्वदिश्तिर्यग्व्यतिक्रमक्षेत्रवृद्धिस्समुत्थन्नराप्रानानि ॥ ३० ॥

**Urdhvhastiriyagvyatikramaksetravridhhi  
smrityantaradhanani.**

(The partial transgressions of the first *Gunavṛata*, i.e., *तिर्यक्*, *dirgyata*, are )

1. ऊर्ध्वव्यतिक्रम, *Urdhavyatikrama*, (In passion or negligence to go up) higher than your limit (in the vow )
2. अधोव्यतिक्रम, *Adhavyatikrama*, (In passion or negligence to go down) lower than your limit (in the vow )
3. तिर्यग्व्यतिक्रम, *Tiryag-vyatikrama*, (In passion or negligence to go in the) other 8 directions, beyond your limit (in the vow )
4. क्षेत्रवृद्धि *Ksetravridhhi*, (In passion or negligence) to increase (in one and decrease in the other directions, the boundaries (of the distance which is the limit in the vow )
5. स्मृत्यन्तराधान, *Smrityantaradhana* Forgetting the limit in the vow (but still to go on recklessly. This transgression will arise even if the limit vowed is not exceeded )

### SUTRA 31

आनयनप्रेषप्रयोगशब्दरूपानुपातपुद्गलक्षेपाः ॥ ३१ ॥

**Anayanapresyaprayogashabdarupanupatapudgalaksepah.**

(The partial transgressions of the second *Gunavṛata*, i.e., *देशव्रत* *dehavṛata*, are :)

1. आनयन, *Anayana*, sending for something from beyond the limit.
2. प्रेष्यप्रयोग, *Presyaprayoga*, sending some one out beyond the limit.
3. शब्दानुपात, *Shabdānupata*, sending one's voice out beyond limit, e. g., by telephone.
4. रूपानुपात, *Rupānupata*, making signs for persons beyond the limit, as the morse code with flags, etc.
5. पुद्गलक्षेप *Pudgalaksepā*, Throwing something material beyond the limit.

### SUTRA 32

कन्दर्पकौकुच्यमाखर्याऽममीक्ष्यधिकरगोपभोगपरिभोगानर्थक्यानि ॥ ३२ ॥

**Kandarpakautkuchyamaukharyasamiksyadhikaranopabhogaparibhoganarthakyaṇi.**

(The partial transgression of the "Third Gunavṛata," i. e., अनर्थोदरह-  
मः *anarthadandavṛata*, are .

1. कन्दर्प, *Kandarpa*, Poking fun at another.
2. कौकुच्य, *Kautkuchya*, Gesticulating, and mischievous practical joking
3. मोखरी, *Maukharya*, Gossip, garrulity
4. असमीक्ष्यधिकरण, *Asamiksyadhikarana*, Overdoing a thing.
5. उपभोगपरिभोगानर्थक्य, *Upabhogaparibhoganarthakya*, Keeping too many consumable and non-consumable objects.

### SUTRA 33

योगदुःप्रणिधानादरस्मृत्यनुपस्थानानि ॥ ३३ ॥

**Yogaduhpranidhananadarasmṛtyanupasthanani.**

(The partial transgressions of the first शिखाव्रत, *Sikṣavṛata*, i. e.,  
सामयिक *Samayika*, are )

1. मनोदुःप्रणिधानम्, *Manoduspranidhanam*, Misdirection of mind (during meditation.)
2. कायदुःप्रणिधानम्, *Kayaduspranidhanam*, Misdirection of body (during meditation.)
3. वाक्दुःप्रणिधानम्, *Vakduspranidhanam*, Misdirection of speech during meditation.

4. अनादर, *Anadara*, Lack of interest.
5. स्मृत्यनुपस्थान, *Smrityunupasthana*, Forgetting of due formalities.

### SUTRA 34

अप्रत्यवेक्षिताप्रमार्जितोत्सर्गदानसंस्तरोपक्रमणानादरस्मृत्यनुपस्थानानि ॥ ३४ ॥

**Apratyaveksitapramarjitotsargadanasamstaropakram-ananadarasmrityanupasthanani.**

(The partial transgression of the second शिखाव्रत, *Sikṣāvrata*, i. e., प्रोषधोपवास, *Prośadhopavasa*, are :)

1. अप्रत्यवेक्षिताप्रमार्जितोत्सर्ग, *Apratyaveksitapramarjitotsarga*, To excrete in a place without inspecting and without sweeping it.
2. अप्रत्यवेक्षिताप्रमार्जितदान *Apratyaveksitapramarjitadana*, To take up or lay down things in a place, without inspecting and without sweeping it.
3. अप्रत्यवेक्षिताप्रमार्जितसंस्तरोपक्रमण, *Apratyaveksitapramarjita Sanstaropakramana*, To spread a mat or seat in a place, without inspecting and without sweeping it.
4. अनादर, *Anadara*. Lack of interest.
5. स्मृत्यनुपस्थान, *Smrityanupasthana*, Forgetting of due formalities.

### SUTRA 35

सचित्तसम्बन्धसम्मिश्राभिषवदुःपक्वाहाराः ॥ ३५ ॥

**Sachittasambandhasammishrabhisavaduhpakvahara.**

(The partial transgression of the third शिखाव्रत *Sikṣāvrata* i.e. उपभोग-परिमोक्षपरिमाणाव्रत, *Upbhogaparibhagoparimanavrat*, are

1. सचित्ताहार *Sachittahara*, Taking living things, e. g. green vegetable
2. सचित्तसम्बन्धाहार *Sachittasambanda Ahara*, Taking anything connected with a living things, e. g. using a green leaf as a plate.
3. सचित्तसम्मिश्राहार *Schittasammuhra Ahara*, Taking a mixture of living and non-living things, e. g. hot with fresh water.
4. अभिषवाहार, *Abhisavahara*, Taking aphrodisiacs, or strengthening or exciting food.
5. दुःपक्वाहार, *Duhpakvahara*, Taking badly cooked food.

## SUTRA 36

सच्चित्तनिक्षेपापिधानपरव्यपदेशमात्सर्यकालातिक्रमा ॥ ३६ ॥

**Sachittaniksepapidhanaparavyapadeshamatsarya kalatikramah**

(The partial transgression of the fourth शिष्याव्रत *Sikṣāvṛata*, i. e. अतिथिसंविभागव्रत, *Atithisambhagavratra*, are :)

1. सच्चित्तनिक्षेप, *Sachittaniksepa*, Placing the food on a living thing, e. g. on a green plantain leaf
2. सच्चिदापिधान, *Schittapidhana*, Covering the food with a living thing
3. परव्युपदेश, *Paravyupadesha*, Delegation of host's duties to another.
4. मात्सर्य *Matsarya*, Lack of respect in giving, or envy of another donor
5. कालातिक्रम *Kalatikrama*. Not giving at the proper time.

## SUTRA 37

जीविनमरणात्सामित्रानुरागसुखानुबन्धनिदानानि ॥ ३७ ॥

**Jivitamaranasamsamitrānūragasukhanubandhanidanani.**

(The partial transgression of सल्लेखना *Sallekhana* (peaceful death) are :)

1. जीवितार्शना, *Jivitashansa*, Desire to prolong one's life.
2. मरणाशङ्का, *Marnashansa*, Desire to die soon.
3. मित्रानुराग, *Mitrānūraga*, Attachment to friends.
4. सुखानुबन्ध, *Sukhanubandha*, Repeated remembrance of past enjoyments.
5. *Nīdana*, Desire of enjoyments in the next world.

## SUTRA 38

अनुग्रहार्थं स्वस्यानिसर्गो दानम् ॥ ३८ ॥

**Anugrahartham svasyatisargo danam**

Charity is the giving off one's belongings for the good (of one's self and of others.)

## SUTRA 39

विधिद्रव्यदातृपात्रविशेषान्द्विषेष्ट ॥ ३९ ॥

**Vidhidravyadatṛpatravisesattadvīṣeṣaḥ.**

(The fruition of charity is) different (according to the difference in :

1. विधि, *Vidhi*, Manner.
2. द्रव्य, *Dravya*, Thing given.
3. दातृ, *Datṛ*, Person who gives, and
4. पात्र, *Patra*, Person to whom it is given

The manner of giving is of 9 kinds .

1. समग्र, *Samgraha*, Respectful reception of an ascetic. The usual formula is "Welcome! welcome. Food and drink are pure here."
2. उच्चस्थान, *Uchchasthana*, Seating him on a exalted seat.
3. पादोदक, *Padodaka*, Washing his feet.
4. अर्चन, *Archana*, Worshipping him.
5. प्रणाम, *Pranama*, Bowing to him.
- 6—8. वाक्कायमनःशुद्धि, *Vakkayamanahsuddhi*, Being pure in speech body and mind.
9. एषणशुद्धि, *Esanashuddhi*, Faultless way of giving food.

The thing given must be helpful in study and austerities.

The person who gives must have 7 qualities :

1. अहिक्कफलानपेक्षा, *Ahikafalanapeksa*, Must not wish any gain in this world in its exchange.
2. क्षान्ति, *Ksanti*, Must give calmly without anger.
3. मुदित, *Mudita*, Must be happy at giving
4. निष्कपटता, *Niskapatata*, Without deceit.
5. अनमूल्यत्व, *Anasuyatva*, Without envy.
6. अविसादित्व, *Avīsaditva*, Without repentence, and
7. निरहंकारत्व, *Nirahankaratva*, Without pride.

The person to whom it is given must be one of the three kinds :

1. उत्तमपात्र, *Uttamapatra*, Ascetics,
2. मध्यमपात्र, *Madhyamapatra*, Laymen with vows,

3. जग्घन्याय, *Jaghanyapatra*, Layman with right belief but not with vows,

These three with right belief are called सुपात्र *Supatras*, good donees ; and those who are with proper external conduct but without cal right belief are कृपात्र *Kupatras*, deficient donees. 'Unworthy donees (*Apatras*) are those who have neither proper external conduct nor real right belief. There is no merit in giving them anything.

There is also a कर्मुणादान *Karuna-dana*, or the gift of compassion to anyone—Jain or non-Jaina, human or sub-human being, who is in need of it. This charity is of 4 kinds

1. आहार, *Ahara*, Food.
2. औषधि, *Ausadhi*, Medicine
3. अभय, *Abhaya*, Reassuring the frightened, or removing their cause of fear.
4. विद्या, *Vidya*, Knowledge.



# अध्याय आठवां

## CHAPTER VI11

### SUTRA 1.

मिथ्यादर्शनाविरतिप्रमादकषाययोगा बन्धहेतवः ॥ १ ॥

**Mithyadarshanaviratipramadakasayayoga bandha  
hetavah.**

The causes of (कष) Bandha or bondage are .

1. मिथ्यादर्शन Mithyadarshana, wrong belief. It is of 5 kinds :

- (1) एकान्त Ekanta. Taking only one aspect of a many-sided thing e.g man is mortal and un-mortal, regarded from the point of view of body and soul respectively. Taking only one view is Ekanta.
- (2) विपरित Viparita, perverse belief, e.g animal sacrifices lead to heaven
- (3) संशय Samshaya, Doubt, scepticism, hesitation, e.g., as to path to Liberation.
- (4) विनय Vinaya, Veneration. Taking all religions and gods to be equally worthy of pursuit
- (5) अज्ञान Ajnana. Wrong belief caused by ignorance. Indiscrimination of good and bad. It is caused by  
निर्माण, Nisarga, inborn error , or by अधिगम Adhigama, preaching of another.

The last is of 4 kinds .

क्रियावादी Kriyavadi, belief in time, soul, etc , as causing everything in the world.

अक्रियावादी Akriyavadi, opposite of the last.

अज्ञानिक Ajnanika, Agnostic.

वैनेयिक Vaineyika, Religion is identical with veneration of parents, king, etc, e.g., Confucianism.

All these four together form 363 varieties of wrong belief(or पाक्षवत्), i.e., 180, 84, 67 and 32 respectively.

निर्माण Nisargaja is also cllcd अग्रहीत Agrahita , अधिगमन Adhigamaja, ग्रहीत Grahita.

(2) अविरति Avirati, vowlessness. Non-renunciation. It is of 12 kinds :

Lack of compassion for 6 classes of embodied souls, and lack of restraint of 5 senses and 1 mind.

(3) प्रमाद Pramada, Carelessness. This is of 15 kinds :

Four kinds of कथा Katha, talk, about :

1 Food (भोजनकथा Bhojana-Katha).

2 Women (स्त्रीकथा, Stri-Katha).

3 Politics (राज्यकथा Rajya-Katha).

4 Scandal (दिराकथा Desha-Katha).

5 Senses (इन्द्रिय).

4 Passions (कषाय).

1 Affection (स्नेह).

1 Sleep (निद्रा).

15 Each together bring 80 भङ्गा bhangs, divisions :

As : 1 Katha  $\times$  1 sense  $\times$  1 passion  $\times$  1 Sneha  $\times$  1 Nidra = one

So  $\cdot$  4 kinds of talk  $\times$  5 senses  $\times$  4 passions  $\times$  1 affection  $\times$  1 sleep = 80.

4. कषाय Kasaya, passions, given below (द्वय Sutra 9).

5. योग Yoga. Vibrations in the soul, through mind, body and speech. They are of 15 kinds :

4 of mind :

(1) सत्यमन Satyamana, true mind.

(2) असत्यमन Asatyamana, false mind.

(3) उभयमन Ubhayamana, mixed true and false mind.

(4) अनुभयमन Anubhaya-mana. neither true nor false.

4 of speech

(1) सत्यवचन Satya-vachana, True

(2) असत्यवचन Asatya-vachana, False

(3) उभयवचन Ubhaya-vachana, Both

(4) अनुभववचन Anubhaya-vachana None.

7 of body

(1) औदारिक Audarika, physical.

(2) औदारिकमिश्र Audarika-mishra, i.e. physical with karmic

(3) वैक्रियक Vaikriyaka Fluid.

(4) वैक्रियकमिश्र Vaikriyaka-mishra. Fluid with karmic.

(5) आहारक Aharaka.

(6) आहारकमिश्र Aharaka-mishra, i.e. Aharaka with ph<sup>4</sup>asic

(7) कार्माण Karmana. Karmic.

[NOTE—The तैजस Tairas, electric body, is always found with the karmic body, never has independent yoga (योग). The



electric molecules are drawn like the karmic molecules by the vibrations set in the soul by yoga of any kind.

As to these 5 causes of bondage:

In the 1st, 2nd and 3rd गुणस्थान *Gunasthanas*, Stages of Spirituality all the causes are found, though in the second the first is absent for a very short time.

In the 4th *Gunasthana*, all but the 1st are found.

In the 5th and 6th *Gunasthanas*, all but the first 2 are found.

In the 7th, 8th, 9th and 10th *Gunasthanas*, all but the first 3 are found.

In the 11th, 12th and 13th *Gunasthanas*, all but the first 4 are found.

In the 14th *Gunasthana* none

These 5 are collectively called प्रकृत्य *Pratyaya*.

(See कुन्दकुन्दाचार्यकृत समवयवप्रब्रितम्, *Kundakundacharya's Samaya Sara Prabhritam*.)

## SUTRA 2

सकषायत्वज्जीवः कर्मणो योग्यानुपदृगवानादत्ते स कस्य ॥ २ ॥

**Sakasayatvajjivah karmano yogyan upadrgavana adatte sa bandhah**

The soul, owing to its being with passion, assimilates matter which is fit to form karmas This (1c) is bondage

## SUTRA 3

प्रकृतिस्थित्यनुभागप्रदेशस्तद्विधेयः ॥ ३ ॥

**Prakriti sthityanubhagapradeshastadyidhayah.**

(There are 4 ) kinds of that (bondage) according to

1. प्रकृति *Prakriti* Nature of karmic matter, e.g. ज्ञानावरणी knowledge-obscuring, or दर्शनावरणी cognition-obscuring, etc.
2. स्थिति *Stithi*. Duration of the attachment of karmic matter to the soul.
3. अनुभव *Aunbhava* The fruition being strong or mild, (also called अनुभाग *Anubhaga*).
4. प्रदेश *Pradesha* The number of karma vaiganas or karmic molecules, which attach to the soul.

The first and the last are caused by योग *yoga*, vibratory activity of the soul and middle two by कषाय *passions*.

## SUTRA 4

आद्यो ज्ञानदर्शनावरणवेदनीयमोहनीयाद्युत्तमगोत्रान्तरायः ॥ ४ ॥

**Adyo jnanadarshanavarana vedaniyamohaniyayurna-  
magotrantarayah.**

The main divisions of the nature of karmic matter are 8:

1. ज्ञानावरण, *Jnanavarana*, knowledge-obscuring.
2. दर्शनावरण, *Darshanavarana*, conation-obscuring.
3. वेदनीय, *Vedaniya*, Feeling-karma.
4. मोहनीय, *Mohaniya*, Deluding
5. आयु *Ayu*, Age.
6. नाम, *Nama*, Body-making
7. गोत्र, *Gotra*, Family-determining
8. अन्तराय, *Antaraya*, Obstructive

## SUTRA 5

पञ्चनवद्वयष्टाविंशतिचतुर्विंशद्विपञ्चभेदा यथाक्रमम् ॥ ५ ॥

**Panchanavadvyastavinsatichaturdvichatvarimsaddvipan-  
chabheda yatha karmam.**

(They are of) 5, 9, 2, 28, 4, 42, 2, 5 classes respectively

This 42 has been classified into 93, so that sub-classes come to 148.

## SUTRA 6

मतिश्रुतावधिमत पर्यय केवलानाम् ॥ ६ ॥

**Matisrutavadhimanah paryaya kevalanam**

(ज्ञानावरण, *Jnanavarana*, knowledge-obscuring is of 5 kinds, according, as it is )

1. मति (ज्ञानावरण), *Mati Janavarana*, Sensitive, (knowledge obscuring).
2. श्रुत (ज्ञानावरण), *Shrut-Jnanavarana*, Scriptural (knowledge-obscuring).
3. अवधि (ज्ञानावरण), *Avadhi-jnanavarana*, Visual (knowledge obscuring.)

4. मनःपर्वय (ज्ञानावरण), *Manahparyavya-jnanavarana*, Mental (knowledge-obscuring.)
5. केवल (ज्ञानावरण) *Kevala-jnanavarana*, Perfect (knowledge obscuring)

### SUTRA 7

चक्षुरचक्षुरवधिकेवलानां निद्रानिद्रानिद्राप्रचलाप्रचलाप्रचला

स्त्यानगृह्ययश्च ॥ ७ ॥

**Chaksura chaksura-vadhi kevalanam nidrahidranidraprachalaprachalastyanagrddhapasch, kadafeduedye.**

(दर्शनवरण, *Darshanavarana*. Conation-obscuring is of 9 kinds according as it) obscures :

1. *Ocular-obscuring*, (चक्षु दर्शनवरण) *Chaksu Darshanavarana*.
  2. *Non-ocular-obscuring*, (अचक्षु दर्शनवरण) *Achaksu* „
  3. *Visual-obscuring*, (अवधिदर्शनवरण) *Avadhi Darshanavarana*,
  4. *Perfect-conation-obscuring*, (केवलदर्शनवरण) *Kevala* „
- (And 5 kinds of sleep .)

1. Sleep, (निद्रा) *Nidra*
2. Deep sleep, (निद्रानिद्रा) *Nidranidra*.
3. Drowsiness, (प्रचला) *Prachala*.
4. Heavy-drowsiness, (प्रचलाप्रचला) *Prachala Prachala*, and
5. Somnambulism, (स्त्यानगृहि) *Styanagriddhi*.

स्त्यानगृहि *Styanagriddhi* is so called because the activity of the person is manifested in sleep. This is always associated with painful or undesirable conditions of mind. According to Jainism, it is attended with a kind of monomania, i e, with अर्तभ्यान *Arta-dhyana* and with unrighteous or wicked concentration, i e., with रौद्र भ्यान *raudra-dhyana*

### SUTRA 8

सदसद्वेद्ये ॥ ८ ॥

**Sadasadvedye.**

इनीय *Vedanīya* or feeling (is of 2 kinds .)

1. सातावेदनीय *Satavedanīya*, Pleasure-bearing, and
2. असातावेदनीय *Aśatavedanīya*, Pain-bearing.

**SUTRA 9**

दर्शनचारित्रमोहनीयाकषायकषायवेदनीयाख्यास्त्रिद्विनवषोडशभेदः सम्यक्त्व-  
मिथ्यात्वतदुभयान्यकषायकषायौहास्यरसपरनिशोकभयजुगुप्सास्त्री पुन्नपुंसकवेदा  
अनन्तानुबन्ध्यप्रत्याख्यानप्रत्याख्यानसंज्वलनविकल्पाश्चैकशःक्रोधमा-  
नमायालोभाः ॥ ९ ॥

**Darsana charitramohaniyakasayavedaniyakhyastridvi-  
navasodasa bhedahsamyaktvamithyatvatadubhayanyakas  
ayakasaya uhasyaratyaratishokabhaya jugupsa stripunna pu-  
nsaka vedaanantanubandhya pratyakhyana pratyakhyana  
pratyakyanasamjvalana vikalpaschaikasa hkrodhamana  
mayalobha.**

मोहनीय *Mohaniya*, Deluding (is of 28 kinds. the Primary divisions  
are two )

1. दर्शनमोहनीय *Darshanmohan:ya*, Right-belief-deluding.
2. चारित्रमोहनीय *Charitramohaniya*, Right-belief-deluding  
(Right-conduct-deluding 2 kinds :)

1 अकषायवेदनीय *Akasaya-vedaniya*, or नोकषाय *Nokasaya*, with  
slight passions.

2 कषायवेदनीय *Kasaya-vedaniya*. with passions.

(They are of) 3,2,9,16 (kinds respectively .)

(Right-belief-deluding दर्शनमोहनीय is of 3 kinds :)

1. मिथ्यात्व *Mithyatva*, Wrong-belief.
2. सम्यक् मिथ्यात्व *Samyakmithyatva*, mixed wrong and right belief.
3. सम्यक् प्रकृतिमिथ्यात्व *Samyak-prakriti-mithyatva*, Right-belief with  
e slight defect, i. e. clouded by slight wrong belief.

(*Akasaya-vedaniya* or no-kasaya is of 9 kinds :)

1. हास्य *Hasya*, Risible, laughter-producing.
2. रति *Rati*, Indulgence.
3. अरति *Arati*, Ennui, Dis-satisfaction, languor.
4. शोक *Shoka*, Sorrow.
5. भय *Bhaya*, Fear.
6. जुगुप्सा *Jugupsa*, Disgust.
- स्त्रीवेद *Striveda*, Feminine inclinations
8. पुंवेद *Pumveda*, masculine inclinations.

9. नपुंसकवेद *Napunsakaveda*, Common inclinations.

(कषायवेदनीय *Kasayavedaniya*, is of 16 kinds.)

(4 passions) क्रोध Anger, मान Pride, माया Deceit, लोभ Greed.

Each of these is of 4 kinds.

1. अनतनुबंधी *Anantanubandhi*. Error-feeding or wrong-belief assisting. These are so called because they keep the soule bound in संसार *Sam-sar*, which is called अनन्त *"Ananta"* and in which the soul is kept wandering by these passions feeding its erroneous belief. Ananta also means wrong belief. And these Passions are called Anantanubandhi, because they nourish or feed wrong belief. It is very lasting (like a stone-engraving).

2. अप्रत्याख्यान *Apratyakhyana*, Partial-vow-preventing. It is less lasting (as a furrow).

3. प्रत्याख्यान *Pratyakhyana*, Total-vow-preventing. It is mild (as a line in dust.)

4. संज्वलन *Samjvalana*, Perfect-right-conduct-preventing. It is very mild (as a line in water.)

[Thus we get 16, i.e., (4×4) kinds.]

The 16 are exemplified as follows.

Anger is deep like a furrow in stone,

" " earth ;

" line " dust ;

" " water,

Pride is unbending like a mountain, bone, wood, cane.

Deceit is crooked like a bamboo-root, horn of a ram, stream of cow-water, hoof-mark.

Greed is fast like crimson colour, wheel-dirt, body-dirt, tarmetic colour.

See Gommatasara-Jiva, Kanda Gatha, 283-286.

## SUTRA 10

नारकतैर्यग्योनमानुषदैवानि ॥ १० ॥

**Narakatairagyonamanusadaivani.**

(आयु *Ayu*. Age-karma bondage is of 4 kinds,) according as it determines :

The (1) नरक *Naraka*, Hellish,

(2) तिर्यक् *Tiryak*, Sub-human,

(3) मनुष्य *Manusya*, Human, and

(4) देव *Deva*, Celestial (character of the soul's life

आयु *Ayu* is so-called, because the soul ऐति *Eti*, comes to enter a new condition of existence.

## SUTRA 11

गतिजातिशरीरांगोपांगनिर्माणबन्धनसंघातसंस्थानसहननस्पर्शरसगन्धवर्ण-  
नूपूष्यगुरुलघूपघातपरपाततपोद्योतोच्छ्वासविहायोगतयः प्रत्येकशरीरत्रसमुभग-  
मुस्वरशुभसूक्ष्मपर्याप्तिस्थिरादेययशःकीर्तिसेतराणि तीर्थकरत्वं च ॥ ११ ॥

**Gatijatisherirangopanga nirmanabandhana sanghata sam-  
sthana samhanana sparsha rasagandha varnanupurvyā guru  
laghupaghata paraghata tapo dyoto chchhvasa vihayo gatayah  
pratyeka sharira trasa subhaga susvara shubha suksma paryap  
tisthira deya yashah kirti setarani tirthakaratvam cha.**

(The नामकर्म *Namakarma*. Body-making bondage is of 42, i. e.,  
with sub-classes of 93 kinds, as they bring about their respective  
effect.)

4 गति *Gati*, Condition of existence .

- (1) नरक *Naraka*, Hellish.
- (2) त्रिवेच *Tiryancha*, Sub-human
- (3) मनुष्य *Manusya*, Human.
- (4) देव *Deva*, Celestial.

*Gati* is so-called, because by the operation of this karma,  
the soul गच्छति *Gachchhati* goes from one to another  
condition of existence.

5 जाति *Jati*, Genus of beings .

- (1) एकेन्द्रिय *Ekendriya*, one-sensed.
- (2) द्विन्द्रिय *Dvi-indriya*, two-sensed.
- (3) त्रिन्द्रिय *Tri-indriya*, Three-sensed.
- (4) चतुरिन्द्रिय *Chatu-indriya*, four-sensed.
- (5) पंचन्द्रिय *Panch indriya*, Five-sensed

*Jati* is a karma by the operation of which a soul is born  
in a class, in which other souls, of a similar condition,  
are also grouped.

5 शरीर *Sharira*, Bodies .

- (1) औदारिक *Audarika*, Physical.
- (2) वैक्रियिक *Vaikryika*, Fluid.
- (3) आहारक *Aharaka*, Aharaka.
- (4) तैजस *Taijasa*, Electric.
- (5) कर्मण *Karmana*, Karmic.

*Sharira* is the karma, by the operation of which material  
molecules are set moving to form a particular body.

6 अंगोपांग *Angopanga*, Limbs and minor-limbs :

- (1) औदारिक *Audarika*, In physical bodies.

- (2) वैक्रियिक *Vaikriyika*, In fluid bodies.
- (3) आहारक *Aharaka*, In aharaka, bodies.

1 निर्माण *Nirmana*, Proper formation of limbs and minor limbs in relation to their situation (स्थाननिर्माण *Sthana-nirmana*) and Dimensions (प्रमाणनिर्माण *Pramana-nirmana*.)

5 बन्धन *Bandhana*, 5 kinds of molecular bondage, according as the body is :

- (1) औदारिक *Audarika*, Physical.
- (2) वैक्रियिक *Vaikriyika*, Fluid.
- (3) आहारक *Aharaka*, Aharaka
- (4) तैजस *Tajasa*, Electric
- (5) कर्मण *Karmana*, Karmic

5 मवात *Sanghata*. Interfusion of molecules of different kinds of bodies in weaving them with the soul. It takes place in .

- (1) औदारिक *Audarika*, Physical.
- (2) वैक्रियिक *Vaikriyika*, Fluid.
- (3) आहारक *Aharaka*, Aharaka.
- (4) तैजस *Tajasa*, Electric, and
- (5) कर्मण *Karmana*, Karmic bodies.

6 संस्थान *Samsthana* Figure of the body :

- (1) समचतुरस्र संस्थान *Sama-chaturasra-samsthana*. Perfect proportion all round.
- (2) न्यग्रोधपरिमण्डलसंस्थान *Nyagrodhaparimandala-samsthana*. Like a banyan tree, short in the lower extremities and large in the upper body.
- (3) स्वातिसंस्थान *Svati-samsthana*. It is the reverse of the last.
- (4) कुब्जसंस्थान *Kubja-samsthana*. Hunch-back.
- (5) वामनसंस्थान *Vamana-samsthana*. Dwarf.
- (6) वृष्टकसंस्थान *Hundaka-samsthana* Quite disproportionate

6 संहनन *Samhanana*, 6 kinds of skeleton or osseous structure:

- (1) वज्र ऋषभ नाराच संहनन *Vajra risabha naracha samhanana*. Adamantine nerves, joints (or amphiarthrodial articulation, when the bones are slightly moveable and united by an intervening substance) and bones.
- (2) वज्रनाराचसंहनन *Vajra naracha samhanana*. Adamantine joints and bones.
- (3) नाराचसंहनन *Narachsamhanana*. Joints and bones. Ordinary amphiarthrodial articulation and bones.

- (4) अर्धनाराचसंहनन *Ardhanarachasamhanana*. Semi-joints and bones. A form of articulation weaker than *Narachasamhanana*.
- (5) कलितसंहनन *Kalitasamhanana*. Jointed bones. Synarthrodial articulation in which bones are unmoveable and directly united.
- (6) असम्प्रप्राप्तिकासंहनन *Asampraptasrpatikasamhanana*. Loosely-jointed bones. Diarthrodial articulation in which bones may be more or less freely moveable, when the articular surfaces are covered with smooth cartilage and surrounded by a fibrous capsule. Most of the joints of the human body are of this form.

8 स्पर्श *Sparsha*. 8 kinds of touch

- (1) उष्ण *Usna*, Hot.
- (2) शीत *Shita*, Cold.
- (3) स्निग्ध *Smigdha*, Smooth.
- (4) रुक्ष *Ruksa*, Rough.
- (5) मृदु *Mridu*, Soft
- (6) कर्कश *Karkasha*, Hard.
- (7) लघु *Laghu*, Light.
- (8) गुरु *Guru*, Heavy.

रस *Rasa*. 5 kinds of taste

- (1) तिक्त *Tikta*, Pungent
- (2) कटुक *Katuka*, Bitter
- (3) कषाय *Kasaya*, Acid.
- (4) आम्ल *Amla*, Sour.
- (5) मधुर *Madhura*, Sweet.

2 गन्ध *Gandha*. Smells

- [1] सुगन्ध *Sugandha*, Sweet-smelling
- (2) दुर्गन्ध *Durgandha*, Evil-smelling

5 वर्ण *Varna* Colours :

- (1) शुक्ल *Shukla*, White.
- (2) कृष्ण *Kṛṣṇa*, Black
- (3) नील *Nīla*, Indigo
- (4) रक्त *Rakta*, Red.
- (5) पीत *Pīta*, Yellow.

- 4 अनुपूर्वा *Anupurva* The power of retaining the form of the body in the last incarnation, during the विग्रहगति *Vigraha-gati*, i. e., the passage of the soul from one condition of existence to another. Relating to the forms of the 4 condi-



tions of existence, to which the soul is proceeding.

- (1) नरकगत्यानुपूर्वी *Narkagatyānupurvi*, Hellish.
- (2) त्रियगत्यानुपूर्वी *Triyagatyānupurvi*, Sub-human.
- (3) मनुष्यागत्यानुपूर्वी *Manusyagatyānupurvi*, Human.
- (4) देवागत्यानुपूर्वी *Devagatyānupurvi*, Celestial.

*Narakagatyānupurvi* means retaining form of previous life before hellish one and so on

अगुरुलघु *Agurulaghu*. Neither too heavy to move nor too light to have stability.

उपघात *Upaghata*. The possession of a self-destructive limb or organ which becomes the cause of one's own death. As a kind of stag with horns, which when they become too heavy, cause his death.

परघात *Paraghata*. Possessed of a limb or organ fatal to others, e. g., the sting of a scorpion, etc.

आतप *Atapa*. Radiant heat. Possessed of a body which is brilliant and bearable to the owner but intolerable and heating for the others. Such as the gross earth-bodied souls in the Sun from which sunshine comes

[Hot light like Sun-shine.]

उद्योत *Udyota*. Phosphorescence. An illuminated body like that of the fire-fly. Such as the earth-bodied souls in the moon.

[Cold light like Moon-shine.]

उच्छ्वास *Uchchhvasa*. Respiration.

२ विहायोगति *Vihayogati*. Capacity of moving in आकाश, space. This is of 2 kinds

(1) शुभविहायोगति *Shubhavihayogati*, Graceful, like that of a swan

(2) अशुभविहायोगति *Ashubhavihayogati*, Awkward

प्रत्येक्षरस *Pratyeksharasa*. A body possessed and enjoyable by one soul only, as a mango.

साधारणरस *Sadharanasharasa*. One body possessed and enjoyable by many souls, as a potato, etc

त्रस *Trasa*. Mobile. Having a body with 2, 3, 4, 5, senses.

स्थविर *Sthavira*. Immobile. Having a body with one sense only, i. e. touch.

सुमन *Subhaaga*. Amiable personality even though not beautiful.

- दुर्भगा, *Durbhaga*. Unprepossessing, even though beautiful.  
 सुस्वर, *Susvara*. Sweet-voiced. Pleasing toned, with musical voice.  
 दुःस्वर, *Duhsvara*. Harsh-voiced.  
 शुभ, *Shubha*. Beautiful body.  
 अशुभ, *Ashubha*. Ugly-body.  
 सूक्ष्म, *Shuksma*. Fine body, uncuttable, all-pervasive.  
 बादर, *Badara*. Gross-body.

पर्याप्ति, *Parayapti*. Within one अन्तर्मुहूर्त<sup>१</sup> *Antarmuhurta*, the gaining by the soul of the capacity to develop fully the characteristics of the body into which it incarnates. The developments are of 6 kinds, 1st 4 only in one-sensed souls, 1st 5 in 2, 3, 4, and 5 sensed souls, but only in 5 sensed souls without mind (असंज्ञी *Asanjñi*) all the 6 in others.

1. आहारपरोपति, *AharaParyapti*. In taking of the molecules to make the body.
2. शरीरपरोपति, *Sharira-Parvapti*. Development of body.
3. इन्द्रियपरोपति, *Indriya Parvapti*. Development of sensed organs.
4. प्राणवायुपरोपति, *PranapanaParvapti*. Development of respiratory organs.
5. भाषापरोपति, *Bhasa-Paryapti*, Development of vocal organs.
6. मनपरोपति *Mana Paryapti*, Development of the organs of the mind. अपरोपति *Aparyapti*, To die within one अन्तर्मुहूर्त<sup>१</sup> *Antarmuhurta*, without gaining the above.

स्थिर *Sthira* Steady circulation of blood, bile, etc, e. g. among men. Steady circulation, etc., relates to 7 kinds of धातु *Dhatu*, primary physiological matter, 1 e

- (1) रस, *Rasa*, Juice.
- (2) रक्त, *Rakta*, Blood.
- (3) मांस, *Mansa*, Flesh
- (4) मेद *Meda*, Fat.
- (5) अस्थि *Asthi*, Bone.
- (6) मज्जा, *Majja*, Marrow
- (7) शुक्र, *Shukra*, Semen virile.

The nutrition taken in, is transformed into these 7 gradually in 30 days. From one to the other the transformation takes  $\frac{30}{7} = 4\frac{2}{7}$  days.

The 7 kinds of उपधातु *Upadhatu* or secondary physiological matter are .

- (1) वात, *Vata*. Wind.
- (2) पित्त, *Pitta*.
- (3) श्लेष्म, *Shlesma*. Phlegm.

- (4) शिरा, *Shira*, A tubular vessel of the body, as vein.
- (5) स्नायु, *Snayu*, Muscle.
- (6) चर्म, *Charma*, Skin.
- (7) उदराग्नि, *Udaragni*, Digestive fire of the stomach; gastric fluid.

All these remain steady where they ought to be, by the operation  
स्थिरनामकर्म *Sthira-nama-karma*

अस्थिर, *Asthira*. unsteady circulation of blood, bile, etc., e. g.,  
among women.

आदेय, *Adeya*. Radiant appearance, so as to effect others

अनादेय, *Anadeya*. Dull appearance.

यशः कीर्ति, *Yashahkirti*. Bringing good fame

अयशः-कीर्ति, *Ayashahkirti*. Bringing bad name even if he does good  
actions.

तीर्थंकर, *Tirthakara*. A Tirthankara's career, with all its grandeur,  
when He preaches and completes His ministry.

### SUTRA 12

उच्चैर्नचैश्य ॥ १२ ॥

**Uchchairnichaisycha.**

(गोत्रकर्म, *Gotra* or Family-determining karma is of 2 kinds :

- (1) उच्चगोत्र *Uchchagotra*, High , and
- (2) नीचगोत्र. *Nichagotra*, Low

### SUTRA 13

दानलाभभोगोपभोगविर्याणाम् ॥ १३ ॥

**Danalabhabhogopabhogaviryanam.**

(अन्तरायकर्म *Antaraya* or Obstructive karma is of 5 kinds, as it  
obstructs )

- (1) दानान्तराय, *Danantaraya*, Charity.
- (2) लाभान्तराय, *Labhantaraya*, Gain.
- (3) भोगान्तराय, *Bhogantaraya*, Enjoyment of consumable things
- (4) उपभोगान्तराय, *Upabhogantaraya*, Enjoyment of nonconsumable  
things.
- (5) वीर्यान्तराय, *Viryantaraya*, Exercise of one's capacities; power.

Note—The प्रकृति, *Prakṛiti* or nature of the bondage is finished  
here. Now we go on to consider the duration of the bondage.

**SURTA 14**

आदितस्त्रिंशत्सगरोपमाकोटीकोट्यः परा स्थितिः ॥ १४ ॥

**Aditastisrinamantarāyasya cha trinshatsagropamakotik-  
otyah para sthiti.**

The maximum duration of the 3 from the first, (i. e. ज्ञानावरणीय knowledge-obscuring, दुराग कर्माणि Conation-obscuring and वेदनीय Feeling karmas,) and of अन्तराय Obstructive-karmas, is 30 crore × crore सगर Sagaras.

This is possible in a rational 5 sensed, fully developed (पर्याप्त paryapta) soul, and having wrong belief (मिथ्यात्व Mithyatva.)

**SUTRA 15**

सप्ततिर्मोहनीयस्य ॥ १५ ॥

**Saptatirmohaniyasya.**

(The maximum duration) of मोहनीय Deluding-karma (1s) : 70 (crore × crore सगरas.)

**SUTRA 16**

विंशतिर्नामगोत्रयोः ॥ १६ ॥

**Vinshatirnamagotrayoh.**

(The maximum duration) of नाम Nama, Body-making and गोत्र, Gotra, Family-determining (karmas 1s) 20 (crore × crore सगर Sagaras for each)

This is also possible as above.

**SUTRA 17**

त्रयस्त्रिंशत्सगरोपमायुषः ॥ १७ ॥

**Trayastrinshatsagaropamanyayusah.**

(The maximum duration) of आयु, Ayu, Age karma (1s) 33 सगर Sagaasr.

**SUTRA 18**

अपरा द्वादशमुहूर्ता वेदनीयस्य ॥ १८ ॥

**Aparadvadashamuhurta vedaniyasya.**

(The minimum duration) of वेदनीय, *Vedaniya*, Feeling karma (is) 12 मुहूर्त *Muhurtas*=12×48 minutes.

**SUTRA 19**

नामगोत्रयोरष्टौ ॥ १९ ॥

**Namagotrāyoraṣṭau.**

(That) of नाम *Nama*, Body-making and गोत्र *Gotra*, Family-determining (is) 8 मुहूर्त *Muhurtas*.)

**SUTRA 20**

शेषाणामन्तर्मुहूर्ता ॥ २० ॥

**Shesānamantarmuhurta.**

Of all the rest (The minimum is) one अन्तर मुहूर्त *Antar-muhurta*, (which ranges from 1 समय *Samaya* and 1 आवृत्ति *Avah* at the lowest to 48 minutes—1 समय *Samaya*.)

**SUTRA 21**

विपाकोऽनुभवः ॥ २१ ॥

**Vipakoanubhavaḥ.**

अनुभव *Anubhava* (is the maturing and) fruition of karmas.

**SUTRA 22**

सयथानाम् ॥ २२ ॥

**Sa yathanama.**

That (fruition is) according to the name (of the karma.), e. g., ज्ञानावरणीय knowledge-obscuring karma prevents the acquisition of knowledge and so on.

**SUTRA 23**

ततश्च निर्जरा ॥ २३ ॥

**Tatashcha nirjara.**

After that (fruition, the karmas fall off. That is) निर्जरा *Nirjara*.  
It is of 2 kinds :

1. सविपाक *Savipaka*, where the soul in the maturity of time is, rid of the karmas by their operating and falling off from it.
2. अविपाक *Avipaka*, when by force of ascetic practices etc (तप *Tapa* etc.) The karmas which had not yet matured to operate, are induced to fall off from the soul.

**SUTRA 24**

नामप्रत्यया सर्वतो योगविशेषात्मकमैकक्षेत्रावगाहस्थिताः सर्वात्मप्रदेशेष्वनन्तान्-  
नन्तप्रदेशा ॥ २४ ॥

**Namapratyayah sarvato yogavishesatsuksmaikaksetrava-  
gahasthitah sarvatmapradeshesvanantanantapradeshah.**

(According to the nature) caused by their names, from all round, due to the difference in the vibrations (योग *Yoga*) in the soul activity, not perceptible by the senses, the karmic molecules enter and become one and stay with every moment, to each soul.

The particular number of the molecules actually absorbed is called प्रदेशबन्ध *pradesha-bandha*.

**SUTRA 25**

सद्वेद्यशुभायुर्नामगोत्राणि पुण्यम् ॥ २५ ॥

**Sadvedyashubhayurnamagotrani punya.**

पुण्य *Punya*, or meritorious karmas (are the following) :

1. सोद्वेद्य, *Sadvedya* or सातावेदनीय, *Satavedamya*, pleasure-bearing.
2. शुभायु, *Shubhayu* ; good age-karma.
3. शुभनाम, *Shubha-nama*, good body-making karma.
4. शुभगोत्र, *Shubha-gotra* ; high-family-determining.

Their sub-classes are 42

1. सातावेदनीय, *Sata-vedamya*. Pleasure-bearing.
2. शुभायु, *Shubhavu* ; 1. तिर्यक, *Tiryancha*, Sub-human  
2. मनुज, *Manusya*, Human.  
3. देव, *Deva*, Celestial.

## 37 शुभनाम, Shubhanama

2 गति *Gatis*. (1) Human. (2) Celestial1 जाति *Jati*. 5 sensed (genus of feelings)3 शरीर *Sharira*, all 5 bodies.3 आंगोपांग *Angopanga*, all 3 limbs and organs.1 समान *Samsthana*, perfect proportion सम-स्तु-ला-स्वा-1 गहन *Samhanana*, the highest वज्र चपम ना । २ महन1 स्पर्श, *Sparsha*.1 रस *Rasa*1 गन्ध, *Gandha*1 वर्ण, *Varna*.2 आनुपूर्वी *Anupurvis*: human and celestial.1 अगुरुलघु *Agurulaghu*1 परघात *Paraghata*1 उच्छ्वस *Uchchvasa*1 आलप *Atapa*1 उद्योत *Udyota*1 विहायोगति *Vihayogati*, i. e. Shubha1 त्रस *Trasa*.1 बादर *Badara*.1 पर्याप्त *Paryapati*1 प्रत्येक शरीर *Pratyeka-sharira*1 स्थिर *Sthira*1 शुभ *Shubha*.1 शुभग *Shubhaga*1 सुस्वर *Susvara*1 आदेय *Adeya*1 यशः कति *Yashah-kirti*.1 निर्माण *Nirmana* (Shubha)1 तीर्थकार *Tirthakar* [For the meaning of all these see Sutr. above.]1 उच्चगोत्र *Uchchagotra*. High family

42 Total.

## SUTRA 26

अतोऽन्यत्पापम् ॥ २६ ॥

Atoanyatpapam.

(The karmas) other than these (are) पाप *Papa* (or demeritorious karmas.)

# अध्याय नवां

## CHAPTER IX SUTRA 1

आश्रवनिरोधः संवरः ॥ १ ॥

**Ashravanirodhah samvarah**

संवर *Samvara* (is) the stoppage of inflow of karmic matter into the soul.

The causes of Inflow and Bondage are given in Ch. VIII, Sutra I  
Wrong belief (*Mithyadarshana*) is stopped (*Samvara*) in the 4th spiritual stage (*Gunasthana*) ;

Vowlessness (*Avirati*) in the 5th and 6th ,

Carelessness (*Pramada*) in the 7th .

Passion (*Kasaya*) in the 8th, 9th and 10th ,

Vibration (*Yoga*) in the 14th stage.

For the 14th Spiritual Stages see Ch. X, Sutra 2

## SUTRA 2

स गुप्तिसमितिधर्मानुप्रेक्षापरीषद्ब्रज्यचारित्रैः ॥ २ ॥

**Sa guptisamitidharmanupreksaparisahajayacharitrai.**

It (is produced by :) )

3 kinds of गुप्ति *Gupti*, Preservation

5 " " समिति *Samuti*, Carefulness

10 " " धर्म *Dharma*, Observances, (*Dharma*)

12 " " अनुप्रेक्षा *Anupreksa*, Meditation.

22 " " परिषद् ब्रज्य *Parisah-jaya*, Subdual of sufferings, and

5 " " चारित्र *Charitra*, Conduct.

## SUTRA 3

तपसा निर्जरा च ॥ ३ ॥

**Tapasa nirjara cha.**

By austerities (is caused) shedding of karmic matter, and (also stoppage of inflow.)



## SUTRA 4

सम्यग्योगनिग्रहो गुप्तिः ॥ ४ ॥

**Samyagyoganigrahoguptih.**

गुप्ति *Gupti*. Prevention (is) proper control (nigraha) over mind  
॥, speech वचन and body कृत्व.

## SUTRA 5

ईर्याभाषैपणादाननिकषेपोत्सर्गाः समितयः ॥ ५ ॥

**Eryabhasaisanadananiksepotsargah samitayah.**

समिति *Samiti*, Carefulness (is) to take.

(सम्यक्कट्योपमिति), *Samyakiryusamiti* Proper care in walking

(सम्यक्कृत्वापमिति), *Samyakbhasasamiti* " " " speaking.

(सम्यक्दृष्टवणापमिति), *Samyakesanasamiti* " " " eating

(सम्यक्कृत्वादान नि लेप भूमिति), *Samyakadanamibsepasamiti*. Proper care  
in lifting and laying

(सम्यक्कृत्वात्सर्गमिति), *Samyakutsargusamiti*. Proper care in excreting

## SUTRA 6

उत्तमक्षमामार्दवारजवशीचमत्यसयमनपस्यगकिञ्चन्यब्रह्मचर्याणि धर्मः ॥ ६ ॥

**Uttamaksamamardavarjava shauchasatyasamyama  
tapastyaga kinchanyabrahmacharyani dharmah.**

(The १० आश्रमाणि 10 Observances are )

उत्तमक्षम *Uttama-kṣama*, Forgiveness

उत्तममार्दव *Uttama-mardava*, Humility

उत्तमआर्जव *Uttama-arjava*, Straight-forwardness, (Honesty)

उत्तमशौच *Uttama-shaucha*, Contentment.

उत्तमसत्य *Uttama-satya*, Truth

उत्तमसम्यग *Uttama-samyama*, Restraint.

उत्तमतप *Uttama-tapa*, Austerities.

उत्तमत्याग *Uttama-tyaga*, Renunciation

उत्तमअकिञ्चन्य *Uttama-Akimchanya*, Not taking the non-elf for  
one's own self (non-attachment) and

उत्तमब्रह्मचर्य *Uttama-brahmacharya*, Chastity, all of the highest  
degree.

## SUTRA 7

अनित्याशरणसंसारैकत्वान्यत्वाद्युभ्यास्त्वसंवरनिर्जरा लोकबोधिदुर्लभधर्मत्वा-  
भ्यातत्त्वानुचिन्तनमनुप्रेक्षाः ॥ ७ ॥

**Anityasharanasamsarāikatvanyatvashuchyasravasamvarani-  
rjaralokabodhidurlabhadharmasvakhayatattvanuchintanamānu-  
prekṣah.**

(The *ānupreksā*, 12 meditations are :)

1. अनित्यानुप्रेक्षा, *Anityānupreksa*, Everything is subject to change or transitory.
2. अशरणांनुप्रेक्षा, *Asharanānupreksa*, Unprotectiveness, Helplessness. The soul is unprotected from the fruition of *karmas*, e. g., death, etc.
3. भ्रमरानुप्रेक्षा, *Samsāranupreksa*, Mundaneness. Soul moves in the cycle of existences and cannot attain true happiness till he is out of it.
4. एकत्वानुप्रेक्षा, *Ekātvanupreksa*, Loneliness. I am alone the doer of my actions and the enjoyer of the fruits of them.
5. अन्यत्वानुप्रेक्षा, *Anyatvanupreksa*, Separateness. Otherness. The world, my relations and friends, my body and mind, they are all distinct and separate from my real self.
6. अशुच्यनुप्रेक्षा, *Aśhuchyanupreksa*, Impurity. The body is impure and dirty. Purity is of 2 kinds of the soul itself, and of the body and other things. This last is of 8 kinds.
7. आस्रवानुप्रेक्षा, *Asrāvanupreksa*, Inflow. The inflow of *karmas* is the cause of my mundane existence and it is the product of Passions, etc.
8. संवरानुप्रेक्षा, *Samvarānupreksa*, Stoppage. The inflow must be stopped.
9. निर्जरानुप्रेक्षा, *Nirjarānupreksa*, Shedding. Karmic matter must shed from or shaken out of the soul.
10. लोकानुप्रेक्षा, *Lokānupreksa*, Universe. The nature of the Universe and its constituent elements.
11. बोधिदुर्लभानुप्रेक्षा, *Bodhiduralabhanupreksa*, Rarity of Right Path. It is difficult to attain right belief, knowledge and conduct.
12. धर्मस्वाभाविकानुप्रेक्षा, *Dharmasvakhayatattvanupreksa*, Nature of Right Path. The true nature of Truth, i. e., the 3 fold path to real Liberation.

(These must be) meditated upon again and again. As to the first kind of meditation, viz., transitoriness अनित्यानुप्रेक्षा, *anityānuprekṣa* it must be noted that as Substance, every thing is permanent. Only पदार्थ condition is transitory. Of the matter assimilated as karma and by the soul, that which is accepted by the soul is called उपास *Upatta*. The rest is अनुपास, *Anupatta* matter which is not taken in by the soul.

### SUTRA 8

मार्गाच्चयवननिर्जगर्थं परिषोढव्या परिषह ॥ ८ ॥

**Margachyavananirjarartham parisodhavyah parisahah**

For the sake of now-falling-off from the path (of Liberation,) and for the shedding (of Karmic matter, whatever sufferings are) undergone (are called) the परिषह "Sufferings."

### SUTRA 9

क्षुत्पिपासाशीतोष्णदशमशकनाग्न्यारतिस्त्रीचर्यानिषद्याशयाक्रोधवध्या-  
चनाऽलाभरोगदुःखस्पृहागलसरकारपुरुस्कारपञ्ज्ञानाज्ञाऽदर्शनानि ॥ ९ ॥

**Ksutpipasashitosnad mshamasakanagnyarati stricharyanisa-  
dyashayyakroshavadhayachanaalabhaarogatrinasparshamala-  
satkara puraskaraprajnaajnanadarshnani**

(The 22 परिषह Sufferings are )

1. क्षुब्ध, Hunger.
2. पिपासा, Thirst
3. शीत, Cold
4. उष्ण, Heat
5. दश मदाक, Insect bites, mosquitoes etc.
6. नाग्न्य, Nakedness
7. अरति, Ennui, dissatisfaction, languor
8. स्त्री, Women.
9. चर्या, Walking too much, not to feel the fatigue, but to bear it calmly.
10. निषद्या, Sitting Not to disturb the posture of meditation, even if there is danger from lion, snake etc., etc.
11. शय्या, Sleeping. Resting on the hard earth.
12. आलोरा, Abuse
13. वध, Beating.

14. यानना, (or याच्चा), Begging (To refrain from begging even in need)
15. अलाभ, Failure to get alms.
16. रोग, Disease.
17. वृक्षस्पर्श, Contact with thorny shrubs, etc
18. मल, Dirt. Discomfort from dust, etc
19. सत्कार पुरस्कार, Respect on disrespect.
20. प्रभा, Conceit of knowledge.
21. अज्ञान, Lack of knowledge
22. श्मशान, Slack belief. e g., on failure to attain supernatural powers.

### SUTRA 10

सूक्ष्मसाम्परायच्छपस्थवीतरागयोश्चतुर्दश ॥ १० ॥

**Sukshmasamparayachhadmasthavitaragayoshchaturdasha.**

In सूक्ष्मसाम्पराय, Sukshmasamparaya, (the stage of) 'Slight Passions', (i. e. where all the passions have subsided or are destroyed, except the slightest greed.) (In) छदमन्वर्तितराग, Chhadmasthavitaraga, (उपशान्तमोह, Upashantamoha) where all the passions are suppressed. (In शोणमोह, Ksinamoha where all the passions are destroyed, i. e., to beings in the 10th, 11th and 12th stages of Spirituality, only) 14 (are possible, i. e., all except the 8 sufferings, due to deluding karmas, viz .

- (1) नाग्न्य, Nakedness
- (2) अरति, Ennui, dissatisfaction, etc.
- (3) स्त्री, Women
- (4) निषथा, Sitting or posture
- (5) आक्रोश, Abuse
- (6) याचना, Begging.
- (7) सत्कारपुरस्कार, Respect and disrespect
- (8) श्मशान, Slack belief.

### SUTRA 11

एकादश जिने ॥ ११ ॥

**Ekadasha jino.**

To जिन, Jina, Arhat, (i. e., in the 13th गुणस्थान, Gunasthana, spiritual stage the 4 घातियकर्म, Ghatiyakarma, destructive karmas having been destroyed, only) 11 (sufferings are possible. They are due to वेदनीय, Vedaniya, karma. They are :)

- (1) Hunger.
- (2) Thirst.
- (3) Cold.
- (4) Heat
- (5) Insect-bites.
- (6) Walking.
- (7) Hard earth-bed.
- (8) Beating.
- (9) Disease.
- (10) Contact with thorny shrubs, etc
- (11) Dirt.

But as a rule, because the मोहनीय, Mohaniya Deluding and अन्तराय, Antaray, Obstructive Karmas are destroyed, these sufferings hardly ever arise.

### SUTRA 12

वादरसाम्पराये सर्वे ॥ १२ ॥

**Vadarasamparaye sarve.**

To वादरसाम्पराय, *Vadarasamparaya*, the saints (who are below the 10th stage गुणस्थान, i.e., who are in the 6th, 7th, 8th or 9th stages of spirituality, and) with slightly gross passions, all (the 22 पण्डित- Sufferings are possible)

### SUTRA 13

ज्ञानावरणे प्रज्ञाज्ञाने ॥ १३ ॥

**Jnanavarane prajnaज्ञाने.**

प्रज्ञाConceit and अज्ञान, Lack of knowledge, sufferings (are caused) by (the operation of f) ज्ञानावरणाय, Knowledge-obscuring Karmas.

### SUTRA 14

दर्शनमोहान्तराययोरदर्शनालाभौ ॥ १४ ॥

**Darshanamohantarayayoradarshana la bhau.**

अदर्शन, Slack-belief (by) दर्शनमोहनाय, right-belief-deluding, and failure to get alms by अन्तराय Obstructive, karma.

## SUTRA 15

चारित्रमोहेनग्न्यारतिस्त्रीनिषद्याक्रोशयाचनासत्कारपुरस्काराः ॥ १५ ॥

**Charitramohanagnyaratistrinisyakroshayachanasatkara-puraskarah.**

Nakedness, Ennui, Woman, Sitting or Posture, Abuse, Begging, Respect and disrespect (sufferings are due to ) चारित्रमोहनीय right-conduct deluding karmas.

## SUTRA 16

वेदनीयेषोषाः ॥ १६ ॥

**Vedaniyesheshah-**

The rest (are caused) by वेदनीय, Vedaniya Karmas (They are 11 and given in the 11 th Sutra above)

## SUTRA 17

एकादयो भाज्या युगपदेकस्मिन्नं कोनविंशतिः ॥ १७ ॥

**Ekadayobhajyayugapadekasminnaikonavinsati**

From 1 to 19 at one and the same time can be possible to a saint; (but not more than 19.)

This is obvious for there are 2 sets of contradictory sufferings, which can not co-exist, as.

Heat and Cold.

Sitting and walking and sleeping on hard earth.

## SUTRA 18

सामायिकच्छेदोपस्थापनापरिहारविशुद्धिसूक्ष्मसाम्पराय यथाख्यातमिति

चारित्रम् ॥ १८ ॥

**Samayikachchhedopasthapana-pariharavishuddhisukshmasamparayathakhyatamiti charitram.**

(The 5 kinds of ) सम्यक् चारित्र Right conduct (are:)

(1) सामायिक, Equanimity.

(2) छेदोपस्थापना, Recovery of equanimity after a fall from it

(3) परिहारविशुद्धि, Pure and absolute non-injury

(4) सूक्ष्मसाम्पराय, All but entire freedom from passion.

(5) यथाख्यात, Ideal and passionless conduct.

परिहारविशुद्धि, Parihara-vishuddhi is found only in a man of 37 or 38

years, who has served the तीर्थंकर Tirthankar for 7 or 8 years, i. e., from the age of 30 to that of 37 or 38. He must have read the प्रत्याख्यानपूर्व Pratyakhyanapūrva. See Jiva-Kanda-Gāthā 471-2

### SUTRA 19

अनशनावमोदर्यवृत्तिपरिसंख्यानरसपरित्यागविविक्तशय्यामनकायक्लेशा

बाह्य' तपः ॥ १६ ॥

**Anashanavamodaryyavritti-parisankhyanarasaparitya-gaviviktashaypasana kayakhsa bahyam tapah.**

(तप *Tapa*, austerities are बाह्य external and अश्वन्तर, internal.)

External austerities (are 6.)

1. अनशन *Anshana*, Fasting
2. अवमोदर्य, *Avamodaryya*, Eating less than one's fill, than one has appetite for.
3. वृत्तिपरिसंख्यान, *Vritti-parisankhyana*, Taking a mental vow to accept food from a house-holder, only if a certain condition is fulfilled, without letting any one know about the vow.
4. रसपरित्याग, *Rasaparityaga*, Daily renunciation of one or more of 6 kinds of delicacies, viz
  1. Ghee (Butter, clarified butter.)
  2. Milk.
  3. Curd.
  4. Sugar.
  5. Salt.
  6. Oil.
5. विविक्तशय्यासन, *Vivikta-shayyashana*, Sitting and sleeping in lonely place, devoid of animate beings.
6. कायक्लेश, *Kayakhsa*, Mortification of the body, so long as the mind is not disturbed.

### SUTRA 20

प्रायश्चित्तविनय वैवायव्यत्तयस्वाध्यायव्युत्सर्गध्यानान्युत्तरम् ॥ २० ॥

**Prayashchittavinayavaiyavrytyasvadhyaayavyutsargadhy-ananyuttaram**

The other, (i.e., Internal, austerities are also 6.)

1. प्रायश्चित्त *Prayashchitta*, Expiation.
2. विनय *Vinaya*, Reverence.
3. वैवायव्य *Vaiyavryta*, Service (of the saints or worthy people.)

4. स्वाध्याय, *Svadhya*, Study.
5. व्युत्सर्ग, *Vyutsarga*, Giving up attachment to the body, etc
6. ध्यान, *Dhyana*, Concentration

### SUTRA 21

नवचतुर्दशपञ्चद्विभेदा यथाक्रम प्राग्ध्यानात् ॥ २१ ॥

**Navahcaturdashapanchadvibhedayathakramam  
pragdhhyanat**

(The अश्वत्थ तप, Internal austerities) previous to ध्यान, Concentration (are respectively of ) 9, 4, 10, 5, and 2 kinds.

### SUTRA 22

आलोचनाप्रतिक्रमगतदुभयविवेकव्युत्सर्गतपश्छेद परिहारोपस्थापना : ॥ २२ ॥

**Alochanapratikramanadatadubhayavivekavyutsarga-  
paschhedapariharopasthapanah.**

(The 9 kinds of प्रायश्चित्त, expiation are

1. आलोचन, *Alochana*, Full and voluntary confession to the head of the order
2. प्रतिक्रमण, *Pratikramana*, Self-analysis and repentance for faults
3. तदुभय, *Tadubhaya*, Doing both
4. वि-क, *Viyeka*, Giving up a much-beloved object as a particular food or drink.
5. व्युत्सर्ग, *Vyutsarga*, Giving up attachment to the body
6. तप, *Tapa*, Austerities of a particular kind prescribed in a penance.
7. छेद, *Chheda*, Cutting short the standing of a saint by way of degradation.
8. परिहार, *Parihara* Rustication for some time.
9. उपस्थापन, *Upasthapan*, Fresh re-admission, after expulsion from the order

Any of the above 9 penances is prescribed by the Head, according to the transgression in a particular case

### SUTRA 23

ज्ञानदर्शनचारित्र्योपवारा ॥ २३ ॥

**Jnanadarshanacharitropacharah.**

( विनय Reverence is of 4 kinds)



1. ज्ञानविनय, *Jnanavinaya*, For right knowledge,
2. दर्शनविनय, *Darshanavinaya*, For right-belief,
3. चरित्रविनय, *Charitrvinaya*, For right-conduct and
4. उपचारविनय, *Upacharavinaya*, by observing proper forms of respect, as folding the hands bowing etc., etc.,

### SUTRA 24

आचार्योपाध्यायतपस्विशैक्ष्यग्लानगणकुलसवसाधुमनोज्ञानाम् ॥ २४ ॥

**Acharyopadhyayatapasvishaiksyaglanagenakulasanghah-sa dhu manojnanam.**

(वैधातुस्य Service is of 10 kinds, as it relates to the )

1. आचार्य, *Acharya*, Head of an order of saints
2. उपाध्याय, *Upadhyaya*, Preceptor in an order of saints
3. तपस्वि, *Tapasvi*, Saint who practises severe austerities as long fasts, etc.
4. शैक्ष्य, *Shaiksy*, Student saint.
5. ग्लान, *Glana*, Invalid saints
6. गण, *Gana*, Brothers of the same order (gana.)
7. कुल, *Kula*, Fellow-disciples of the same Head.
8. भव, *Sangha*, Whole order as such, (i e, all the 4 classes of which the order consists

- (1) ऋषि, *Rishi*, Saint with miraculous powers
- (2) यति, *Yati*, Saint with control over the senses
- (3) मुनि, *Muni*, Saint with Visual and Mental knowledge.
- (4) अनगर, *Anagara*, Saint, a houseless ascetic.

Or, all the 4 classes of the community, i. e

- (1) यति, *Yati*, Monk
- (2) आर्यिका, *Aryika*, Nun
- (3) श्रवक, *Shravaka*, Layman
- (4) श्रविक्का, *Shravika*, Lay-woman
9. साधु, *Sadhu*, Saint (of long standing.)
10. मनोज्ञ, *Manojna*, Popular saint.

### SUTRA 25

वाचनापृच्छाननुप्रेक्षाम्नायधर्मेपिदेशा ॥ २५ ॥

**Vachanaprichchhananupreksamnayadharmopadesah.**

(स्वाध्याय, *Savadhyaya*, Study is of 5 kinds :)

1. वाचना *Vachana*, Reading,

2. पृच्छना, *Prichchhana*, Questioning Inquiry on a Doubtful point.
3. अनुप्रेक्षा, *Anupreksha*, Reflection or meditation on what is read
4. आम्नाय, *Amnaya*, Memorising and proper recitation.
5. धर्मोपदेश *Dharmopadesha*, Lecturing or delivering sermons.

### SUTRA 26

बाह्याभ्यन्तरोपधयोः ॥ २६ ॥

**Bahyabhyantaropadhyoh.**

(व्युत्सर्ग) , *Vyutsarga*, giving up attachment to wordly objects, is of 2 kinds :) )

1. बाह्य उपधि, *Bahya Upadhi*, Of external (things.)
2. अभ्यन्तर उपधि, *Abhyantara-upadhi*, Of internal things (as the passions, etc.)

### SUTRA 27

उत्तमसंहननस्यैकान्नचिन्तानिरोधो ध्यानमान्तमुहूर्त्तत् ॥ २७ ॥

**Uttamasamhananasyaikagrachintanirodho  
dhyanamantarmuhurtat.**

ध्यान, *Dhyana*, Concentration is confining (one's thought to one (particular object.) (In a man) with a high-class constitution (of bone, nerves, etc. i. e., the first 3 out of the 6 महनन *Samhananas*, it lasts at the most for, i. e.,) upto one मनुहूर्त *Antaramuhurta*, (i. e., 48 minutes minus one समय, *Samaya* )

### SUTRA 28

आतारौद्रधर्म्यशुक्लानि ॥ २८ ॥

**Artaraudradharmashuklani.**

(It is of 4 kinds .)

1. आतौध्यान *Artadhyana*, Painful concentration , monomania,
2. रुद्रध्यान *Rudradhyana*, Wicked concentration on unrighteous gain, etc.
3. धर्मध्यान, *Dharmadhyana*, Righteous concentration.
4. शुक्लध्यान, *Shukladhyana*. Pure concentration. i. e., concentration on the soul,

## SUTRA 29

परे मोक्षहेतु ॥ २९ ॥

Pare mokṣahetu.

The last two (कर्मेभ्यः, शुक्लभ्यः) *Dharma and Shukla*, are the causes of Liberation. (The other two आर्तभ्यः, स्मृतिभ्यः are the causes of mundane bondage.)

## SUTRA 30

आर्तममनोज्ञस्य सम्प्रयोगे तद्विप्रयोगाय स्मृतिसमन्वाहारः ॥ ३० ॥

**Artamamānojnasya samprayoge tadviprayogaya smritisamanvaha-  
rah.**

आर्तभ्यः, Painful concentration or monomania (is of 4 kinds.) The first kind of) monomania, (is अनिष्ट संयोग Anīṣṭa samyogaja), On connection with an unpleasant object,) to repeatedly think of separation from it.

## SUTRA 31

विपरीतं मनोज्ञस्य ॥ ३१ ॥

Viparitam manojñasya.

(The second monomania is its opposite, i. e. इष्टवियोग Istaviyogaja). (On being separated from a pleasing object, to repeatedly think of reunion with it.)

## SUTRA 32

वेदनायाश्च ॥ ३२ ॥

Vedanayashcha.

The third monomania is

(पीडाचिन्तन, Pīḍa chintavana), (On being afflicted) by a disease or trouble (to be repeatedly thinking of becoming free from it.)

## SUTRA 33

निदानं च ॥ ३३ ॥

Nidanam cha.

(The fourth monomania is :)

निदान, *Nidana* (On being over anxious to) enjoy (worldly objects and not getting them in this world, to repeatedly think of gaining them) in future.

## SUTRA 34

तदविरतदेशविरतप्रमत्तसंभ्रानाम् ॥ ३४ ॥

**Tadaviratadeshaviratapramattasamyatanam.**

That (अवैभान, Painful concentration is possible only to a man in any of the following stages of spirituality गूढभान, ')

अविरत, *Avirata*, Vowless, i. e., in the first 4 stages.

देशविरत, *Deshavirata*. With partial vows, i. e., in the 5th stage.

प्रमत्तसंभ्रत, *Pramattasamyata* Monk with some carelessness, i. e., in the 11th stage.

(But in this last there can be no *vidana*.) A vowless person may be a wrong believer or a right believer. Thus there are 4 kinds of souls for painful concentration viz., wrong, believer, right believer, partial vower; imperfect vower. The concentration is worst in a wrong believer and begins to be milder and milder on wards till we reach the man with all vows but which are kept imperfectly.

## SUTRA 35

हिमान्तस्तेयविषयमरक्षणेभ्यो रौद्रमविरतदेशविरतयो ॥ ३५ ॥

**Himsanrtasteyavisayasamraksanebhyoraudramaviratadeshaviratayoh.**

रौद्रभान, Wicked concentration (is of 4 kinds :)

1. हिसानन्द, *Himsananda*, Delight in hurtfulness

2. अनरितानन्द, *Anrtananda*, Delight in falsehoods.

3. स्तेयानन्द, *Steyananda*, Delight in theft.

4. विषय संरक्षणन्द, *Visaya Sanraksanananda*, Delight in preservation of objects of sense-enjoyments

(This is possible) in the *Avirata*, (i. e. the first 4 and in) *Deshavirata* (i. e., the 5th stages.)

The degrees are the same here as above under Sutra 34. The wrong believer is the worst off.

## SUTRA 36

आज्ञापायविपाकसंस्थानविषयाय धर्म्यम् ॥ ३६ ॥

**Ajnayavipakasamsthanavichyayadharmam.**

धर्मेभान, Righteous concentration (is of 4 kinds, i. e.,) contemplation of :

1. अज्ञाविचय, *Ajnavichaya*, The Principles taken on the faith of the Scriptures, as being the teachings of the Arhats.
2. अथायविचय, *Apayavichaya*, As to how the universal wrong belief knowledge and conduct of people can be removed.
3. विपाकविचय, *Vipakvichaya*, The fruition of the 8 kinds of karmas.
4. संस्थानविचय, *Sansthana vichaya*, The nature and constitution of the Universe.

[This is possible from the (चतुर्थगुणस्थान) 4th to the (नप्तमगुणस्थान) 7th Spiritual stages.]

### SUTRA 37

शुक्ले चाद्ये पूर्वविदः ३७

**Shukle chadye purvavidah.**

(शुक्लध्यान, Pure concentration is also of 4 kinds :) The first 2 kinds of pure concentration (are only possible to saints) possessed of a knowledge of the 14 पूर्व *Purvas*.

(This is always present in the 8th and higher spiritual stages गुणस्थान up to 12th.)

### SUTRA 38

परे केवलिनः ॥ ३८ ॥

**Parekevalinah.**

The last 2 kinds of शुक्लध्यान Pure concentration are peculiar to the man of perfect knowledge केवलि (*kevalin*.)

### SUTRA 39

पृथक्त्वैकत्ववितर्कसूक्ष्मक्रियाप्रतिपातिव्युपरतक्रिया निवर्तनी ॥ ३९ ॥

**Prithaktvaikatvavitarkasuksmakriyapratipativyuparatarivanivartini.**

(The 4 kinds of शुक्लध्यान Pure concentration are :)

- (1) पृथक्त्व वितर्क विचार, *Prithaktva vitarka vichara*, Absorption in meditation of the SELF, but unconsciously allowing its different attributes to replace one another.
- (2) एकत्व वितर्क विचार, *Ekattva vitarka vichara*, Absorption in one aspect of the SELF, without changing the particular aspect concentrated upon.

- (3) सूक्ष्मक्रिया प्रतिपत्तिः, *Suksamakriyapratipatti*, The very fine vibratory movements in the soul, even when it is deeply absorbed in itself, in a kevalin
- (4) व्युपरत क्रिया निवर्ति, *Vyuparatakriyanivarti*, Total absorption of the soul in itself, steady and undisturbably fixed without any motion or vibration whatsoever.

### SUTRA 40

श्रेययोगकाययोगयोगानाम् ॥ ४० ॥

**Tryekayogakayayogayoganam.**

These 4 kinds of शुक्लस्थान, Pure Concentration inhere in .

(The 1st प्रवक्तृ विचारः, *Prathaktvavartarka*, vichara), in (the Saint) with 3 vibratory activities (of the soul through mind, body and speech

(The 2nd, एकवक्तृ विचारः, *Ekatvavartarkayichara*), in (the Saint) with only any one (of the 3 vibratory activities of the soul , )

(The 3rd, सूक्ष्म क्रियाप्रतिपत्तिः, *Suksamakriyapratipatti*) in (the संयोग केवलि *Sayogakevalin* in the 13th stage, शुक्लस्थान, The yoga is) by the body (only , )

(The 4th, व्युपरत क्रिया निवर्ति, *Vyuparatakriya Nivarti*, in (the अवयोग केवलि, *Ayogakevalin*, in the 14th stage, शुक्लस्थान, There is) no yoga or vibratory activity of mind, speech or body.

### SUTRA 41

एकाश्रये सवितकवीचारे पूर्व ॥ ४१ ॥

**Ekashrayesavitarkavicharepurve.**

The first 2 (kinds of Pure concentration are) attainable by one with Scriptural knowledge and consist of meditation upon a part of the Scriptural knowledge. (In the concentration the part meditated upon, may change in character or aspect

### SUTRA 42

अवीचारं द्वितीयम् ॥ ४२ ॥

**Avicharam dvitiyam**

(But) the 2nd (kind of Pure concentration is) free from any such change.

## SUTRA 43

वितर्कः श्रुतम् ॥ ४३ ॥

Vitarkah shrutam.

वितर्क, Vitarka, means Scriptural knowledge.

## SUTRA 44

वीचारोऽर्थव्यञ्जनयोगसंक्रान्तिः ॥ ४४ ॥

Vicharorthavyanjanayogasankranti

विचार, Vichara, means संक्रान्ति Sankranti, i. e., change in अर्थ, Artha, the object of concentration itself, in व्यञ्जन, Vyanjana, the verbal expression, or in योग, Yoga, i. e., in the vibratory activity with which the concentration is going on, i. e., mind, speech, or body

## SUTRA 45

सम्यग्दृष्टिश्चावकविरतानन्तावयोजकदर्शितमोहक्षयोऽपसम्भकोपशान्तमोहक्ष-  
पकक्षीणमोहजिनाः क्रमशोऽसंख्येयगुणनिर्जग ॥ ४५ ॥

**Samyagdristishravakaviratanantaviyojakadarshanamohaksapako-  
pasamakopashantamohaksapakaksinamoha jinah kramashoas-  
amkhyeyagunavirjara.**

The दृष्टिषा, *Avipaka*, voluntary shedding of karmas (in the highest degree of each condition occurs) to an innumerable-fold extent in each of the following stages, compared with the one immediately preceding it.

(The first mention is of the condition of right belief, i. e., the 4th stage in Spiritual Development. In this the shedding is innumerable-fold, असंख्येय गुणी, compared with the condition of the soul just before it acquired right belief. The stages as mentioned are:)

सम्यग्दृष्टि, *Samyagdrsti*. One who has right belief, the 4th गुणस्थान stage. This stage is reached by (उपशम, *Upashama*). The subsidence or by (क्षयोपशम, *Ksayopashama*) Partial destruction subsidence and operation of the passions which feed wrong belief (अनन्तावकक्षी), and of 3 kinds of दर्शनमोहनिष, right-belief deluding karmas.

आवक, *Shravaka*, One who takes the layman's vows i. e., partial vows, the 5th (द्विषित) stage. By क्षयोपशम, *Ksayopashama* of 4 Passions which obscure renunciation.

विन, *Virata* A saint with full vows in the 6th (प्रमत्त), and 7th (अप्रमत्त) stages. By Kṣayopashama of the 4 passions प्रयास्यमान which obscure total renunciation

अनन्तवियोजक, *Anantavijojaka* The same, when he transforms the karmic matter of passions which feed wrong belief, into a lower or less injurious kind of karmic matter of passions,

दशानमोहक्षपक, *Daśhanamohaksapaka* The same when he destroys the 3 kinds of right-belief deluding karmas

उपशमक, *Upashamaka* A saint in the 8th, 9th and 10th गुणस्थान stages, when his (चारित्र्यमोहनं) right-conduct deluding karmas are subsiding.

उपशान्तमोह, *Upashantamoha* In the 11th गुणस्थान stage, when his right-conduct-deluding karmas have totally subsided,

क्षपक, *Kṣapaka*, A saint in the 8th, 9th and 10th stages, when he is destroying the right-conduct-deluding karmas.

क्षयिमोह, *Kṣayimoha*. In the 12th stage, when he has destroyed totally the right-conduct-deluding karmas

जिन, *Jina* In the 13th stage, when he becomes केवली, *Kevali*, i. e., Omniscient, after having destroyed all the 4 बाधिकाकर्म, Destructive karmas, i. e., knowledge, cognition, right-belief and right-conduct deluding karmas, and obstructive karmas, (ज्ञानाकर्षणीय, दर्शनाकर्षणीय, मोहनीय, ध्वंसगुण)

In the 14th गुणस्थान stage, the 4 अबाधिका, non-destructive karmas are also totally destroyed

### SUTRA 46

पुलाकवकुशकुशीलनिर्ग्रन्थातका निर्ग्रन्थाः ॥ ४६ ॥

**Pulakavakushakushilanirgranthasnataka nirgranthah.**

The Nirgranthas, the possessionless (or saints are of 5 kinds )

1. *Pulaka*, (पुलाक). Like the husk, i. e., some times there is a very slight lapse in the perfect observance of their primary vows (मूलगुण, *Mulaguna*).
2. *Vakusha*, (वकुश). They are still slightly coloured by some consideration of their body, books and disciples
3. *Kushila*, (कुशील). Sometimes there is a very slight lapse in the perfect observance of their secondary vows, (उत्तमगुण, *Uttraguna*.)
4. *Nirgrantha*, निर्ग्रन्थ. The absolutely passionless, in the 11th



and 12th stages.

5. *Snataka*, स्नातक The Kevali, in the 13th and 14th stages.

### SUTRA 47

संयमश्च तृप्तप्रतिसेवनातीर्थलिङ्गलेश्योपपादस्थानविकल्पतः साध्याः ॥ ४७

**Samyamashrutapratisevanatirthalingaleshyopapada-  
sthanavikalpatah sadhyah.**

The distinctions (between the possessionless saints) should be considered with reference to the following (8) matters :

1. *Samyama* (मयम), 5 sorts of conduct
2. *Sruta*, (श्रुत), Scriptural knowledge
3. *Pratisevana*, (प्रतिसेवना), Liability to transgression under another's compulsion
4. *Tirtha*, (तीर्थ), Contemporary or successors of the Tirthankaras.
5. *Linga*, (लिङ्ग), Sign, i e , saint शान्ति, both in mind and external observances, and saint शान्ति, less in mind and more in external observances.
6. *Leshya*, (लेश्या) Thought colours
7. *Upapada*, (उपपाद), Whether the saints would be reborn in the heavens or attain liberation
8. *Sthana*, (स्थान), Their stages of conduct and degree of subjection to the Passions.

# अध्याय दसवां

## CHAPTER X.

### SUTRA 1

मोहक्षयात्ज्ञानदर्शनानन्तरान्तरायक्षयाच्च केवलम् ॥ १ ॥

**Mohaksayatjnanadarshanavarantanarayaksayachchakevalam**

केवलज्ञान, Perfect knowledge (is gained) by destroying the मोहनीय, deluding karmas (in the end of the 10th गुणस्थान stage and then by simultaneous destruction of knowledge and cognition-observing karmas (अज्ञानक्षय, दर्शननिवर्तन), and of obstructive karmas (अन्तराय) (in the end of the 12th गुणस्थान) stage.

### SUTRA 2

तन्महेत्त्वसंनिर्वाणस्या कृत्स्न, सर्वप्रमोक्षो मोक्ष. ॥ २ ॥

**Bandhahetvabhavanirjarabhyam kritsnakarmavipramokso mokshah**

मोक्ष Liberation (is) the freedom from all karmic matter, owing to the non-existence of the cause of bondage and to the shedding (of all the karmas).

The karmas are destroyed as per stages

14 गुणस्थान, *Gunasthanas* stages of Spiritual Development.

The thought-activity of the soul due to

1. *Udaya*, Operation

अग, *Upashama*, subsidence

अ, *Ksaya*, Destruction

अज्ञान, *Karopasham*, Destruction subsidence, of मोहनीय, *Mohaniya* deluding karmas and योग, (*Yoga*), vibrations in the soul are called गुणस्थान, *Gunasthanas* (lit. The stages or place of attributes or पञ्चाम, *Panama*, thought-activity.) Their 14 names are

मिथ्या, *Mithyati* Wrong belief Delusion. The thought-activity of the soul due to the operation of the दर्शनमोहनीय, right belief-deluding karmas. In this the soul does not believe in the right path to Liberation. From the 1st i. e., this गुणस्थान, *Gunasthana* the soul goes to the 4th (गुणस्थान, *Gunasthana*) always.

2. **मत्सादन, Sasadana.** Downfall. When there is operation in the 4th stage of one of the 4 अनन्तानुबन्धिकायाः, *Anantanubandhikashayas*, Error-feeling passions, i. e., anger the soul falls down to the 1st stage through the 2nd and the thought-activity in the passage through, is called **सासादन, Sasadana**
3. **मिश्र, Misra,** mixed Operation of सम्प्रक्षिप्त्यात्, *Samyakmithyatvamohniyakarmas* or *Misra Mohniya*. Belief in right and wrong at one and the same time. This is reached always on falling down from the 6th stage
4. **अश्रितसम्यक्त्व, Ashritasamyaktva** Vowless right belief. Belief is produced by the उपशम, *Upashama*, subsidence of the 4 अनन्तानुबन्धिकायाः, *Anantanubandhikashayas*, Error-feeding passions and one are three kinds of दर्शनमोहनाय, right-belief-deluding karmas respectively, i. e., one for a soul who has never been or three for a soul who has been in possession of सम्यक्त्व, *Samyaktva*, right belief. The soul here has belief in the path of Liberation, but cannot observe the rules of conduct for attaining Liberation. 3 kinds of thought-activity may be noted in this stage.
  - (1) उपशमसम्यक्त्व, *Upasamasamyaktva* is attained by the उपशम, *Upasama*, subsidence of 5 or 7 kinds of deluding karmas.
  - (2) क्षयिकसम्यक्त्व, *Kshayikasamyaktva* is attained by the destruction of the 7 प्रकृति *prakrties*.
  - (3) क्षयोपशमसम्यक्त्व, *Ksayonashamasamyaktva* is attained by the destruction or subsidence of 6, and the continuous operation of the 7th, i. e., सम्यक्प्रकृतिसम्यक्त्व, *Samyakprakrtismithyatva*, right-belief clouded occasionally by the slightest wrong belief. This 3rd kind of thought-activity is characterised by चल, गल, जगद, i. e., the 3 defects
1. **Chala** Of being shaken in his right belief, e. g., thinking that, worship of शान्तिनाथ, *Shantinatha* will bring शान्ति, calmness, or that of पारस्वनाथ, *Parsvanatha* will remove obstacles, etc., etc., whereas all Arhats are the same.
- Mala** Of having the thought activity soiled by one or more of the defects on, transgressions, e. g., शङ्का, *Sanka*, doubt.
- कांक्षा, Kanksa**, desire of sense pleasures
- विविक्किता, Vichikitsa**, Hatred of the sick and deformed, etc.

अन्यदृष्टिप्रसंसा, *Anyadristiprasansa*. Thinking admiringly of wrong believers and अन्यदृष्टिस्तव, *Anyadrististanstava*, Praising wrong believers.

- 3 आग्राह, *Agadha* Of losing firm hold of right belief, e. g., dedicating a temple and still thinking it to be one's own property,
  5. देशव्रित्त, *Deshavirata*, actual vows. Taking the Partial vows. All the 11 प्रतिमा, *Pratimas* or stages of a layman's life come in this. (These are given on page, 118 Chapter VII, 20.)
  6. प्रमत्तव्रित्त, *Pramattavirata*, Imperfect vows After renunciation of all worldly objects, still occasionally to turn the mind to the service or needs of the body This is, the *pramattabhava* careless slackness in concentration. Henceforth the stages are all in the life of a मुनि, *Muni*, Saint.
  7. अप्रमत्तव्रित्त, *Apramattavirata* Perfect vows. Renouncing the careless slackness of the 6th *gunasthana*, and being absorbed in spiritual contemplation (समध्याना, Righteous concentration of the highest type)
- From here, there are 2 श्रेणी, *Srenis*, ways of ascent (1) उपसमश्रेणी, *Upasamasreni* in which the अविशमोहनीयकर्म, right-conduct-deluding karma subsides, (2) क्षपकश्रेणी, *Ksapakasreni*, in which it is being destroyed This last is the necessary way to मोक्ष, *Moksha*, Liberation.
- 8 अपूर्वकल्प, *Apurvakarana* New thought activity, करण, *Karana* or thought-activity which the saint's soul had never yet acquired This is the beginning of the 1st शुक्लध्यान, *Sukladhyan*, pure concentration on the pure आत्म, *Atma* or self
  9. अतिवृत्तकरण, *Anivrttakarana*. Advanced thought-activity. Special thought-activity of a still greater purity. A stage of प्रथमशुक्लध्यान, *Prthamasukladhayana*, 1st *Sukladhyan*.
  10. सूक्ष्मसाम्पराय, *Suksmasamparaya* Slightest delusion. All passions are destroyed or have subsided, except सूक्ष्मसम्यक्लोलोभ, very slight nominal greed, this is also 1st *Shukla dhyan*.
  11. उपशान्तमोह, *Upashantamoha*, or उपशान्तकषाय, *Upashantakasaya*, subsided delusion. A thoughtactivity which is produced by the उपशान्त, subsidence of entire चार्तिकमोहनाय right conduct-deluding karmas. This is also 1st *Shukladhyan*. A saint must

fall down from here. But if strong enough, he can resume his ascent from the ७th, *Kṣhapaḥ* mode of ascent in the 8th stage.

12. क्षीणमोह, *Kṣhinamoha*. Delusionless The entire चारित्रमोहनीय, right-conduct-deluding karmas are destroyed in this stage. And the thought-activity produced belongs to the 2nd शुक्लध्यान, *Sukladhayan* The saint attaining this, does so directly from the 10th stage without passing through the 11th stage.
13. सयोगकेवलि, *Sayogakevali*, Vibrating-Perfect soul Before commencing this the soul must have destroyed the three remaining धातिनाशकर्म, Destructive karmas. (ज्ञानावरणीय दर्शनावरणीय, अन्तराय) Knowledge obscuring, conation obscuring and obstructive karmas. Here the soul becomes अर्हत्, Arhat or Perfect soul in human body with vibrations in it. Preaching and Peregrinations belong to this stage.
14. अयोगकेवली, *Ayoga-kevali*, Vibrationless perfect soul This is attained when there is before the sayoga kevali's Liberation just enough time to speak out the 5 letters अ, इ, उ, ए, ओ. In this stage —a very brief one indeed the vibrations of the holy body cease, and the soul attaining Peace and Bliss

### SUTRA 3

ओपसमिदिभ्यत्त्वानां च ॥ ३ ॥

**Aupasamikadibhavyatvanam cha**

(There is also non-existence of *सम्यक् bhava* or thought-activity) due to the operation, subsidence and to the destruction-subsidence and operation of the karma, and of *सम्यक् bhavyatva*, (i. e., the capacity of becoming liberated.

(Of course the *चारित्र्य kṣhayika*, thought-activity due to a total extinction of karmas, is retained, and also *पारिषामिक Parinamika*, the own natural-activity of the soul i. e., its जीवत्व *Jivatva*, soulness or livingness )

### SUTRA 4

अन्यत्र केवलसम्यक्त्वज्ञानदर्शनसिद्धत्वेभ्यः ॥ ४ ॥

**Anyat kevala samyaktvajnana darsana siddhatvebhyah.**

Otherwise (there remain *सम्यक्* perfect-right belief, *ज्ञान* perfect-right knowledge, *दर्शन* perfect conation, and *सिद्धत्वं* the state of having accomplished All

(Perfect conation and perfect knowledge imply perfect power

नन also.

### SUTRA 5

तदनन्तरमूर्द्ध्वं गच्छत्यालोकान्तात् ॥ ५ ॥

**Tadanantaamurddhvam gachchhantyalokantat.**

After that (liberation from all karmas) the liberated souls go upward (right vertically) to the end of लोक *Loka*, (or the Universe).

### SUTRA 6 and 7

पूर्वप्रयोगादसंगत्वाद्बन्धच्छेदात्तथागतपरिणामाञ्च ॥ ६ ॥

आविष्टकुलासचक्रवद्व्यपगतलेपालाभुनयेरसडवीजवर्दान्तशिखावच्च ॥ ७ ॥

(6th) **Purvapravogadasangatva-dbandhachhedattathagatipavinamachcha.**

(7th) **Aviddhakulalachakravadvvyapagatalepalambuvadekan-davijavadagnisikhavachcha.**

(This upward motion is due to 4 considerations )

- (1) पूर्वप्रयोगात्, *Purvapravogata*, (momentum or instinct produced in the soul,) by its previous activity, (directed to the attainment of Liberation) like a potter's wheel (which once set in motion goes on) circling (even when the potter's hand and wand are both taken away)
- (2) असंगत्वात्, *Asangatvat*, The non-association or non-existence of the company (which kept it down, i. e. the absence of karmas,) like (an empty) gourd (which) coated with clay (sinks down in water, but the clay) being washed off, (it bobs up to the surface again)
- (3) बन्धच्छेदान्, *Bandhachchedat*, (On account of) the bondage being broken, like the castor-bean (which flies up at once, when the fruit which kept it in confinement is broken open).
- (4) तथागतपरिणामात्, *Tathagatiparinamat*, (Due to its being the soul's) nature to go upwards, like the flames of fire.

### SUTRA 8

धर्मस्तिकायाभावान् ॥ ८ ॥

**Dharmastikayabhavat.**

(But it does not rise higher than the extreme limit to लोक *Loka* or the Universe), because (beyond it there is) the non-existence of धर्मस्तिकाय *Dharmastikaya* or the medium of motion.

## SUTRA 9

क्षेत्रकालगतिर्लिंगतीर्थचारित्रप्रत्येकबुद्धबोधितज्ञानावगाहनान्तरसंख्याल्पबहुत्वत  
साध्या : ॥ ६ ॥

**Ksetra kala gati linga tirtha charitra pratyeka buddha bodhita  
janana vagahanantara samkhyalpa bahutvata sadhyah.**

(The Liberated soul) should be considered (with reference to the following.)

- 1 क्षेत्र Space (1) The liberation is in its own self  
(2) The Liberated soul is in सिद्धक्षेत्र *Siddhaksetra*, the place of the Liberated.  
(3) The place of the Liberated. आकाश *Akasa* space.  
(4) The place in its last incarnation, such soul could have been born only in one of the 15 कर्मभूमि *Karmabhūmis* in the 2½ द्वीप *Dvipas*,  
(5) The Liberated soul in the 2½ *Dvipas* may have been in the 15 *Varma bhūmis*, but being kid-napped may have been left anywhere in the 2½ *dvipas*, from which he attained Liberation. Therefore the place of the Liberated is as big as the 2½ *dvipas*, i. e. 45 lacs *yojanas* in diameter
2. काल, *Kala* Time (1) Liberation takes place only in one *Samaya* (समय).  
(2) Liberation takes place only when the last incarnation is in the end of the 3rd or in the 4th age of the अवसर्पिणी, *Avasarpini*. But those born in the 4th can attain salvation in the 5th age. And in the उत्सर्पिणी, *Utsarpini*, in the corresponding ages  
(3) But in kid-napping from विदेह, *Videhas*, in all ages, as also in the *Videhas*, from where is Liberation at all times.
3. गति, *Gati*. Condition of Existence .  
(1) Liberated soul is in the 5th or सिद्धगति *Siddhagati*.  
(2) Liberated soul comes up only from the human condition of existence.
4. लिंग, *Linga*. Sex: (1) There is no sex in liberated state.  
(2) In the last incarnation, the soul may have

been feminine, masculine or common in thought-activity or bhavas (भावसिद्धि) in ascending up to the 9th stage. In the 10th stage there are no such bhavas, but the body must be masculine dravya (द्रव्यसिद्धि).

5. तीर्थ, *Tirtha* (1) Liberated soul wasa तीर्थकर, *Tirthankara*.  
(2) „ „ was not a *Tirthankara*.
6. चरित्र, *Charitra*, Conduct. According to the particular conduct which led him to Liberation.
7. प्रत्येकबुद्धोक्ति, *Pratyeka buddha bodhita* Where he was led to the path of Liberation by his own intuition or by the precept of another.
8. ज्ञान, *Jnana* Knowledge. According to the kinds of knowledge which preceded perfect knowledge (केवलज्ञान) They may be 2, 3, or 4 kinds
9. आवागहन, *Avagahana*, Stature, i.e. the form and stature of his last body  
Maximum 525 अनुग, *Dhanusa* = 2100 हाथ, *Haths*.  
Minimum 3½ हाथs.
10. अन्तर *Antara* Interval. When one or more souls are Liberated, there may be a minimum interval of one समय, *Samaya* a maximum interval of 6 months. before others are Liberated. If the rise of Liberated souls is continuous, it must continue at least for 2 samayas and at most for 8 samayas.
11. संख्या, *Samkhya* Number  
(1) Minimum 1 soul in one samaya.  
Maximum 108 souls in one samaya  
(2) In every 6 months, and 8 samayas, 608 souls must be liberated
12. अल्पबहुत्व *Alpa bahutva*. Quantity, as to more or less :  
(1) More will go from the region of their birth.  
Less will go when kid-napped.  
(2) Less from जम्बुद्वीप *Jambu dvipa*. More from धातकीखण्ड, *Dhataki khanda* still more from पुष्करवर्ष द्वीप *Puskaravara dvipa*.





PRINTED BY HON. PRIN. ADVISOR M K JAIN M.A., J.D FROM  
SRI DESH BHUSHAN PRESS, DELHI-6



